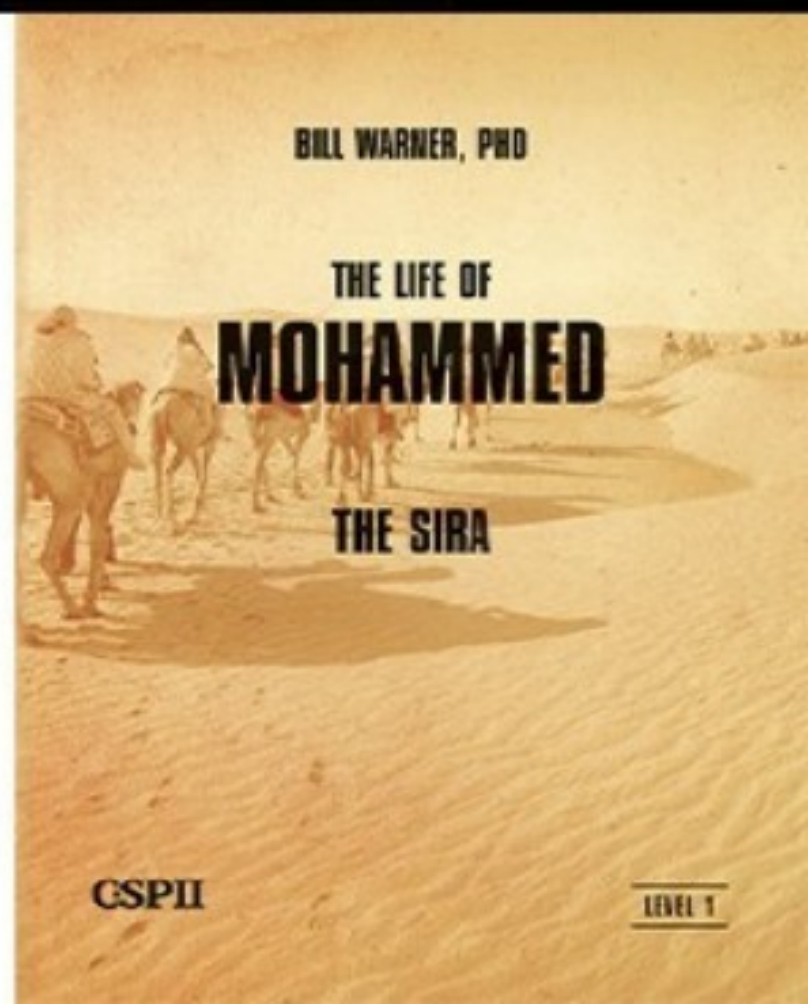
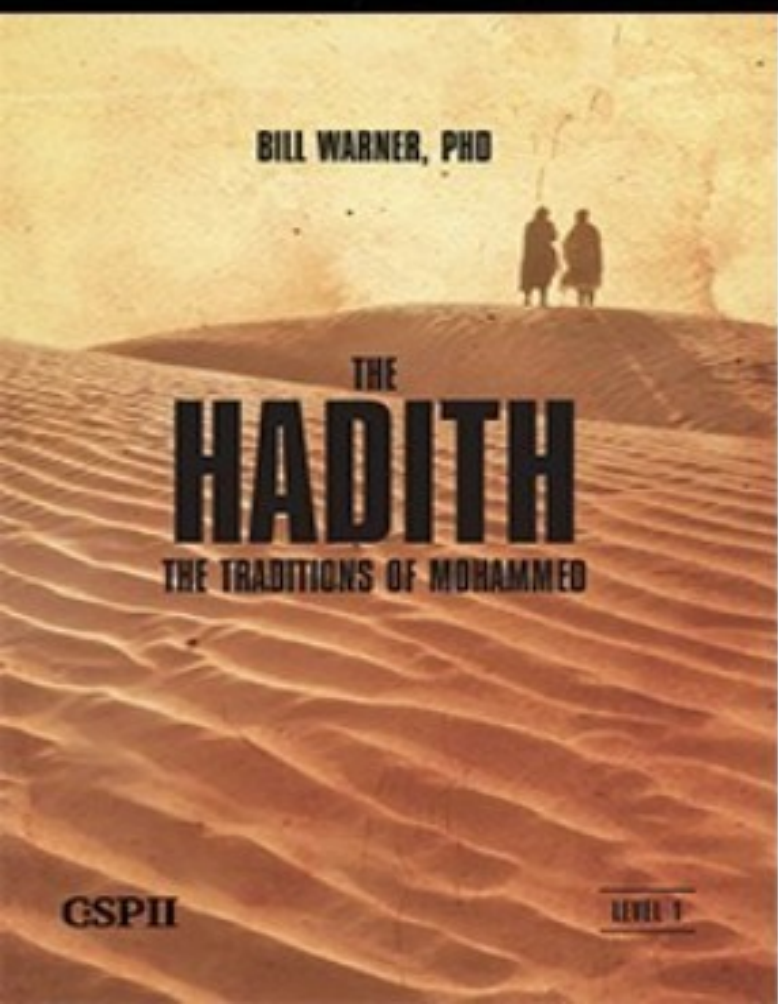


## 4 PAPERBACK BOOKS



# Table of Contents

## 1. The Life of Mohammed: The Sira

Overview

In the Beginning

Beginning Teachings

Public Teaching

Struggles

The Battle That Changed the World

The Jews

The Christians

Jihad, a Setback

Jihad, the Jews Submit

Jihad, the First Dhimmis

Mohammed's Final Jihad

Mohammed's Last Year

Mohammed, the Man

The Tears of Jihad

Comments

## 2. The Hadith: The Traditions of Mohammed

Overview

Ethics

Jihad

The Tears of Jihad

The Dhimmis

The Jews

Christians

Slaves

Women

Sex

Apostates

Satan and Superstitions

Medicine, Health, Science

Bodily Functions

Animals

[Art](#)  
[Mohammed](#)  
[Comments](#)

### [3. A Two-Hour Koran](#)

[Overview](#)  
[Beginning Teachings](#)  
[Public Teaching](#)  
[Struggles](#)  
[Political Beginnings](#)  
[The Jews](#)  
[The Christians](#)  
[The Hypocrites](#)  
[Jihad, War Against All](#)  
[Jihad, the Jews' Exile](#)  
[Jihad, a Setback](#)  
[Jihad, the Jews Submit](#)  
[Mohammed's Family Life](#)  
[Mohammed's Final Jihad](#)  
[Christians and Jews](#)  
[The Sharia](#)  
[Comments](#)

### [4. Sharia Law for Non-Muslims](#)

[Introduction](#)  
[What Is Sharia?](#)  
[Women](#)  
[Family Law](#)  
[The Kafir](#)  
[Jihad](#)  
[Submission and Dualism](#)  
[The Dhimmi](#)  
[Slavery](#)  
[Freedom of Ideas](#)  
[Sharia Finance](#)  
[Demands](#)  
[Appendix](#)  
[Reading List](#)



**BILL WARNER PHD**

**THE**  
**SIRA**  
**THE LIFE OF MOHAMMED**

**CSPI**

**LEVEL 1**

A TASTE OF ISLAM  
THE LIFE OF MOHAMMED  
THE SIRA

BILL WARNER

CENTER FOR THE STUDY OF  
POLITICAL ISLAM

A TASTE OF ISLAM  
THE LIFE OF MOHAMMED  
THE SIRA

BILL WARNER

CENTER FOR THE STUDY OF  
POLITICAL ISLAM

COPYRIGHT © 2010 CSPI, LLC

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED  
V 1.10.11

ISBN13 978-1-936659-06-7

PUBLISHED BY CSPI, LLC  
[WWW.CSPIPUBLISHING.COM](http://WWW.CSPIPUBLISHING.COM)

PRINTED IN THE USA



# OVERVIEW

## CHAPTER 1

The easiest way to learn about Islam is to learn about Mohammed. His biography is called the Sira, and this book is a condensation of it.

### THE ISLAMIC BIBLE—THE TRILOGY

Islam is defined by the words of Allah in the Koran, and the words and actions of Mohammed, called the *Sunna*.

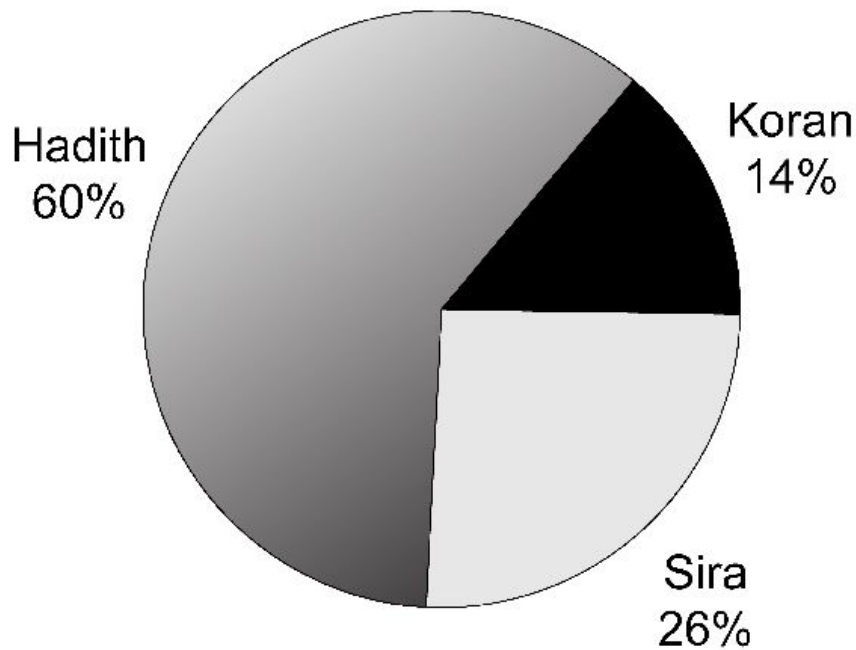
The Sunna is found in two collections of texts—the Sira (Mohammed's life) and the Hadith. The Koran says 91 times that his words and actions are considered to be the divine pattern for humanity.

A hadith, or tradition, is a brief story about what Mohammed did or said. A collection of hadiths is called a Hadith. There are many collections of hadiths, but the most authoritative are those by Bukhari and Abu Muslim, the ones used in this book.

So the Trilogy is the Koran, the Sira and the Hadith. Most people think that the Koran is the bible of Islam, but it is only about 14% of the total textual doctrine. The Trilogy is the foundation and totality of Islam.



## The Relative Sizes of the Trilogy Texts



Islam is defined by the words of Allah in the Koran, and the words and actions of Mohammed, the *Sunna*.

No one text of the Trilogy can stand by itself; it is impossible to understand any one of the texts without the other supporting texts. The Koran, Sira, and Hadith are a seamless whole and speak with one voice. If it is in the Trilogy it is Islam.

### KAFIR

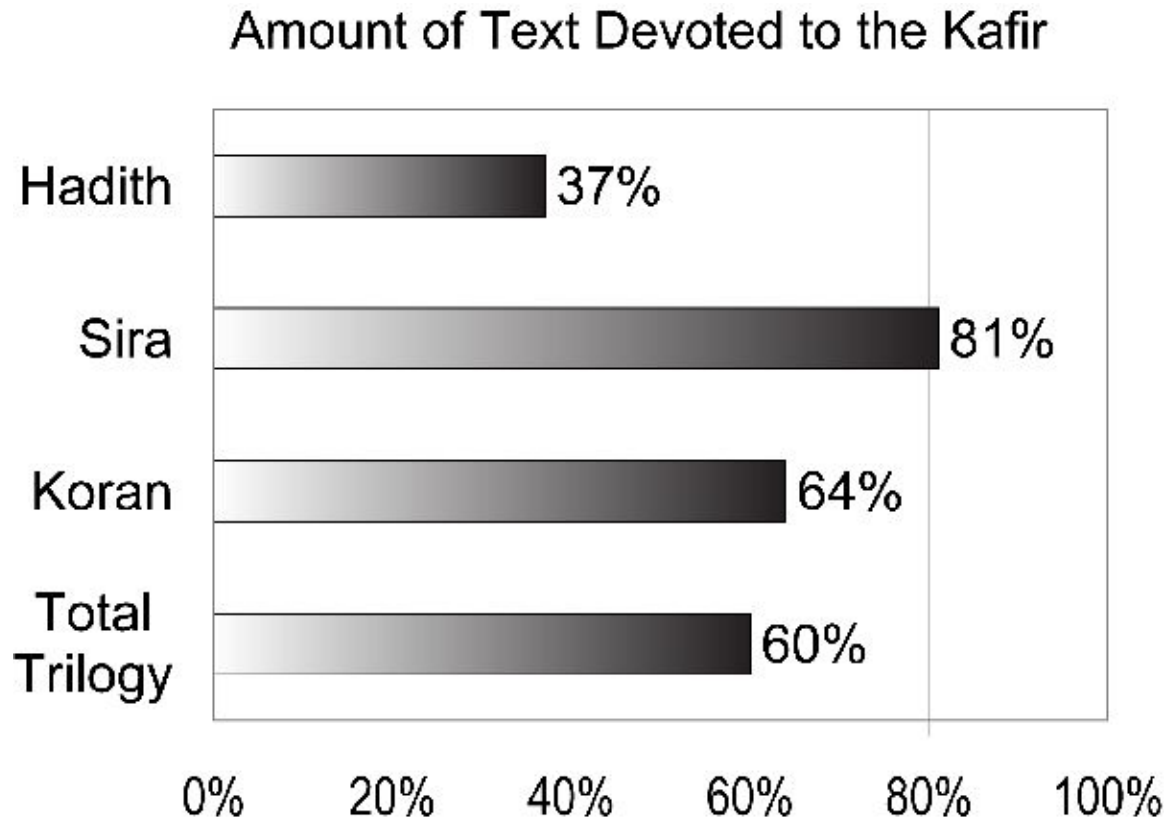
The word Kafir will be used in this book instead of “unbeliever”, the standard usage. Unbeliever is a neutral term. The Koran defines the Kafir and Kafir is not a neutral word. A Kafir is not merely someone who does not agree with Islam, but a Kafir is evil, disgusting, the lowest form of life. Kafirs can be deceived, hated, enslaved, tortured, killed, lied to and cheated. So the usual word “unbeliever” does not reflect the political reality of Islam.

There are many religious names for Kafirs: polytheists, idolaters, People of the Book (Christians and Jews), Buddhists, atheists, agnostics, and pagans. Kafir covers them all, because no matter what the religious name is, they can

all be treated the same. What Mohammed said and did to polytheists can be done to any other category of Kafir.

Islam devotes a great amount of energy to the Kafir. The majority (64%) of the Koran is devoted to the Kafir, and nearly all of the Sira (81%) deals with Mohammed's struggle with them. The Hadith (Traditions) devotes 32% of the text to Kafirs<sup>[1]</sup>. Overall, the Trilogy devotes 60% of its content to the Kafir.

<sup>[1]</sup> <http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/AmtTxtDevotedKafir.html>



Here are a few of the Koran references:

A Kafir can be mocked—

83:34 *On that day the faithful will mock the Kafirs, while they sit on bridal couches and watch them. Should not the Kafirs be paid back for what they did?*

A Kafir can be beheaded—

47:4 *When you encounter the Kafirs on the battlefield, cut off their heads until you have thoroughly defeated them and then take the prisoners and tie them up firmly.*

A Kafir can be plotted against—

86:15 *They plot and scheme against you [Mohammed], and I plot and scheme against them. Therefore, deal calmly with the Kafirs and leave them alone for a while.*

A Kafir can be terrorized—

8:12 *Then your Lord spoke to His angels and said, “I will be with you. Give strength to the believers. I will send terror into the Kafirs’ hearts, cut off their heads and even the tips of their fingers!”*

A Muslim is not the friend of a Kafir—

3:28 *Believers should not take Kafirs as friends in preference to other believers. Those who do this will have none of Allah’s protection and will only have themselves as guards. Allah warns you to fear Him for all will return to Him.*

A Kafir is cursed—

33:60 *They [Kafirs] will be cursed, and wherever they are found, they will be seized and murdered. It was Allah’s same practice with those who came before them, and you will find no change in Allah’s ways.*

## KAFIRS AND PEOPLE OF THE BOOK

Muslims tell Christians and Jews that they are special. They are “People of the Book” and are brothers in the Abrahamic faith. But in Islam you are a Christian, if and only if, you believe that Christ was a man who was a prophet of Allah; there is no Trinity; Jesus was not crucified nor resurrected and that He will return to establish Sharia law. To be a true Jew you must believe that the Torah is corrupt and Mohammed is the last in the line of Jewish prophets.

This verse is positive:

5:77 *Say: Oh, People of the Book, do not step out of the bounds of truth in your religion, and do not follow the desires of those who have gone wrong and led many astray. They have themselves gone astray from the even way.*

Islamic doctrine is dualistic, so there is an opposite view as well. Here is the last verse written about the People of the Book (A later verse abrogates or replaces an earlier verse. See page 26.). This is the final word. It calls for Muslims to make war on the People of the Book who do not believe in the religion of truth, Islam.

9:29 *Make war on those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] but do not believe in Allah or in the Last Day. They do not forbid what Allah and His Messenger have forbidden. The Christians and*

*Jews do not follow the religion of truth until they submit and pay the poll tax [jizya] and they are humiliated.*

The sentence “They do not forbid...” means that they do not accept Sharia law; “until they submit” means to submit to Sharia law. Christians and Jews who do not accept Mohammed as the final prophet are Kafirs.

In Islam, Christians and Jews are infidels and “People of the Book”; Hindus are polytheists and pagans. The terms infidel, People of the Book, pagan and polytheist are religious words. Only the word “Kafir” shows the common political treatment of the Christian, Jew, Hindu, Buddhist, animist, atheist and humanist. What is done to a pagan can be done to a Jew or any other Kafir.

It is simple. If you don’t believe that Mohammed is the prophet of Allah, then you are a Kafir.

The word Kafir will be used in this book instead of “unbeliever”, “non-Muslim” or “disbeliever”. Unbeliever or non-Muslim are neutral terms, but Kafir is not a neutral word. It is extremely bigoted and biased.

## THE THREE VIEWS OF ISLAM

There are three points of view in dealing with Islam. The point of view you have depends upon how you feel about Mohammed. If you believe Mohammed is the prophet of Allah, then you are a believer. If you don’t, you are a *Kafir*. The third viewpoint is that of a *dhimmi*, a Kafir who is an apologist for Islam.

Dhimmis do not believe that Mohammed was a prophet, but they never say anything that would displease a Muslim. Dhimmis never offend Islam and condemn any analysis that is critical of Islam as being biased.

Let us give an example of the three points of view.

In Medina, Mohammed sat all day long beside his 12-year-old wife while they watched as the heads of 800 Jews were removed by sword.<sup>[1]</sup> Their heads were cut off because they had said that Mohammed was not the prophet of Allah. Muslims view these deaths as necessary because denying Mohammed’s prophet-hood was an offense against Islam, and beheading is the accepted method of punishment, sanctioned by Allah.

<sup>[1]</sup> *The Life of Muhammad*, A. Guillaume, Oxford University Press, 1982, pg. 464.

Kafirs look at this event as proof of the jihadic violence of Islam and as an evil act. They call it ethnic cleansing.

Apologists (dhimmis) say that this was a historic event, that all cultures have violence in their past, and that no judgment should be passed. They ignore the Islamic belief that the Sunna, Mohammed’s words and deeds in the past, is

the perfect model for today and tomorrow and forever. They ignore the fact that this past event of the beheading of 800 Jewish men continues to be acceptable in the present and the future, thus the fate of Daniel Pearl (a reporter who was beheaded on camera).

According to the different points of view, killing the 800 Jews was either evil, a perfect godly act or only another historical event, take your pick.

This book is written from the Kafir point of view and is therefore, Kafir-centric. Everything in this book views Islam from how it affects Kafirs, non-Muslims. This also means that the religion is of little importance. Only a Muslim cares about the religion of Islam, but all Kafirs are affected by Islam's political views.

Notice that there is no right and wrong here, merely different points of view that cannot be reconciled. There is no possible resolution between the view of the Kafir and the Muslim. The apologist tries to bring about a bridge building compromise, but it is not logically possible.

## MAXIM

Islam is primarily a political ideology. No action or statement by Islam can be understood without understanding its origins in the Trilogy. Any analysis, statement, or opinion about Islam is incomplete without a reference to the Trilogy. The Trilogy is the source and basis of all Islamic politics, diplomacy, history, philosophy, religion, and culture.

## THE REFERENCE SYSTEM

This book is unusual in that it does two things at once. It is the simplest book you can read to learn about the real Mohammed. At the same time it is an authoritative biography because of the use of reference numbers. [Don't worry about these numbers. If you ignore them it doesn't make any difference. They are there in case you want to confirm what you have read or want to know more. The number allows you look it up in the source text. It is similar to a chapter/verse.] Here is an example:

1125 Mohammed made a decision that would have pleased Solomon.

He...

The I in "I 125" tells you that it comes from Ishaq, the most authoritative writer of the Sira. The 125 is a reference number printed in the margin of the Sira. (The Life of Muhammad, A. Guillaume)

Other references within this work:



M123 is a page reference to W. Muir, *The Life of Mohammed*, AMS Press, 1975.

2:123 is a reference to the Koran, chapter 2, verse 123.

B1,3,4 is a reference to *Sahih Bukhari*, volume 1, book 3, number 4.

M012, 1234 is a reference to *Sahih Muslim*, book 12, number 1234.

This book is adapted from *Mohammed and the Unbelievers* by CSPI Publishing.

# IN THE BEGINNING

## CHAPTER 2

*8:13 This [Allah cast terror into the Kafir's heart] was because they opposed Allah and His messenger. Ones who oppose Allah and His messenger will be severely punished by Allah.*

Mohammed did not create the doctrine of Islam out of thin air or as a philosophical exercise. Each verse and hadith is a response to events in Mohammed's life. In short, there is a context and that context comes from the Sira, Mohammed's biography.

In the Hadith we see the small details, but no big picture. The Koran has almost no story and very little reference to any history. The Sira provides a compelling vision of Mohammed and the explosion of Islam. Only the Sira gives an explanation of how Islam and its doctrine are a historical development.

Mohammed went from being a preacher to a politician and warrior. As a preacher he garnered only 150 followers in 13 years. Then he changed Islam's strategy into a political form. After 10 years of jihad—holy war—Mohammed became the first ruler of all of Arabia and he did not have a single opponent left alive in Arabia. He was completely and totally politically triumphant. The process required 9 years of effort with a violent event every 7 weeks.

The Sira is primarily about jihad. Over 75% of the text is about a political struggle, raids, battles and theft. It is jihad that produces slavery and the political basis for the legal subjugation of women.

The Sira gives a context to Islam. Without the Sira and the Hadith, there is no Islam. Without the story of Mohammed, the Koran is incomprehensible and meaningless.

## CHILDHOOD

Mohammed's father was called Abdullah, meaning slave of Allah. Allah was a high god of the many gods worshiped in the town of Mecca. His father died while his mother was pregnant. When he was five years old, his mother died and his grandfather took over his upbringing. Then Mohammed was orphaned for the third time when his grandfather died and his raising

was assumed by his uncle, Abu Talib. All were of the Quraysh tribe. These brief facts are the history known about his early childhood.

1115 When Mohammed was eight years old, his grandfather died. He was then taken in by Abu Talib, his uncle. His uncle took him on a trading trip to Syria, which was a very different place from Mecca. Syria was a sophisticated Christian country very much a part of the cosmopolitan culture of the Mediterranean. It was Syrian Christians who gave the Arabs their alphabet. When Mohammed was a child, there had never been a book written in Arabic. Only poems and business correspondence were written in Arabic.

## MARRIAGE

1120 When Mohammed was grown, he was hired by the wealthy widow, Khadija, a distant cousin, to act as her agent in trading with Syria. Mohammed had a reputation of good character and good business sense. Trading between Mecca and Syria was risky business because it took skill to manage a caravan and to make the best deal in Syria.

1120 On one trip Mohammed took one of Khadija's slaves along. When they returned, the slave related a story that a Christian had said Mohammed was destined to be a man of power. On the same trip Mohammed managed to double Khadija's investment. She proposed marriage to him. They married and had six children, two sons who died in childhood, and four daughters who lived to adulthood.

## MECCA AS A RELIGIOUS CENTER

In Mecca there was a stone building in the shape of a cube called the Kabah. The Kabah was a religious site that contained many images of several tribal gods. We know of at least six other square stone houses called Kabahs that were in other towns in Arabia. However, Islam holds that the Kabah in Mecca was built by Abraham, the patriarch of the Jews.

The Kabah was the focus of religious rituals and was also a community center. One of Mohammed's ancestors, Qusayy, was a pagan religious leader. Rituals established by Qusayy included prostrations, ritual prayers, and circling the Kabah while praying and drinking from the well called Zam Zam. Other rituals included throwing stones at pillars which symbolized the devil. Most of Islam's rituals come from the aboriginal Arabic religions.

Stones played an important part in the religions of Arabia. The Kabah was made of stone and had an important stone, the Black Stone, built into one corner. It was probably a meteorite and was a composite of several stones. It is small in size, roughly seven inches in diameter. This stone was touched only with the right hand and kissed by pilgrims. All of these native rituals were incorporated into Islam.

The god, Allah, seems to have been a male god of the moon and was probably the god of the Quraysh, Mohammed's tribe. Each tribe had its gods. There was not much organization of the gods, unlike those of the Greeks or Romans.

# BEGINNING TEACHINGS

## CHAPTER 3

*4:13 These are the limits set up by Allah. Those who obey Allah and His Messenger will be led into the Gardens watered by flowing rivers to live forever. This is the ultimate reward!*

## MECCA

1150 Mohammed would take month-long retreats to be alone and practice the Quraysh religion. After the retreat he would go and circumambulate (circle and pray) the Kabah.

1152 At the age of forty Mohammed began to have visions and hear voices. His visions were first shown to him as bright as daybreak during his sleep in the month of Ramadan. Mohammed said that the angel, Gabriel, came to him with a brocade with writing on it and commanded him to read. "What shall I read?" The angel pressed him and said, "Read." Mohammed said again, "What shall I read?" The angel pressed him again tightly and again commanded, "Read!" Again the reply, "What shall I read?"

The angel said:

*96:1 Recite: In the name of your Lord, Who created man from clots of blood.*

*96:3 Recite: Your Lord is the most generous, Who taught the use of the pen and taught man what he did not know.*

T1150 Khadija, his wife, sent men looking for him and brought him back to the house. He told her that he was afraid that he had gone insane or become an ecstatic poet and that he hated both things. She sent him to her cousin who was a Christian. The cousin told Mohammed that he was a prophet.

1154 Khadija told Mohammed to let her know the next time that Gabriel arrived. When he told her that Gabriel had come, she had Mohammed sit next to her on her right side. She asked, "Can you see Gabriel?" Mohammed said, "Yes," he said. Then she asked him to sit next to her on her right side and asked if he could see Gabriel and Mohammed said that he could. Then she told Mohammed to sit in her lap and asked if Gabriel was



still there. Yes. Then she took off her clothes and asked if Gabriel was still there. Mohammed said, “No.” Khadija said, “Rejoice, he is an angel, not a devil.”

## THE FIRST CONVERT

1156 Mohammed’s wife was the first convert. From the beginning, she had encouraged and believed him. She knew that he was of good character and did not think him to be deceived or crazy.

Soon he stopped hearing voices or seeing visions, became depressed and felt abandoned. Then his visions started again.

## PRAYER

1157 Mohammed began to pray with a new understanding. At first he performed two prostrations with each prayer. Later he understood that he should use four prostrations per prayer and use two prostrations when he was traveling.

1158 Then, when he was on a mountain, he saw a vision in which Gabriel showed him how to use ritual ablutions as a purification before prayer. He went home and showed his wife, Khadija, that he now understood how the prayer rituals were done and she copied him.

T1162 Mohammed, his wife and nephew, Ali, started praying at the Kabah incorporating these new rituals of ablutions and prayer with prostrations. A visitor asked about this new ritual and was told that it was a new religion with Mohammed as its prophet.

## EARLY ISLAM

The idea of having an Arabian prophet was new. The sources of the native religions were unknown, but the new religion of Islam had a self-declared prophet. The Jews had prophets, and now the Arabs had their own prophet in Mohammed. The religion was called Islam, meaning submission. Those who joined Islam were called Muslims, meaning those who submitted.

1161 A new element was added to the religion. Any person who rejected the revelations of Mohammed would be eternally punished. Only Islam was acceptable.

1166 The Muslims went to the edge of Mecca to pray in order to be alone. One day a group of the Quraysh came upon them and began to mock them

and a fight started. Saed, a Muslim, picked up the jaw bone of a camel and struck one of the Quraysh with it and bloodied him. This violence was the first blood to be shed in Islam.

1167 When Mohammed first spoke about his new religion, it did not cause any concern among the Meccans. Then Mohammed began to condemn the ancient religions.

1168 Some of the Quraysh went to Abu Talib, Mohammed's uncle and tribal protector, and said to him, "Your nephew has cursed our gods, insulted our religion, mocked our way of life, criticized our civilization, attacked our virtues, and said that our forefathers were ignorant and in error. You must stop him, or you must let us stop him. We will rid you of him." Abu Talib gave them a soft reply and sent them away.

1169 The Quraysh realized that Abu Talib was not going to help. Mohammed continued to preach Islam and attack them and their lives. Mecca was a small town, everyone knew everyone else. Islam had split the town of Mecca and divided the ruling and priestly tribe.

1170 Things worsened. Soon there was open hostility in Mecca. Quarrels increased, arguments became very heated. Complete disharmony dominated the town. The tribe started to abuse the recently converted Muslims, but Mohammed's uncle Abu Talib was a respected elder and was able to protect them from real harm.

The Koran gives such precise details and direct quotes of their arguments that if you were a Meccan of that day, you would easily know recognize the person.

111:1 *Let the hands of Abu Lahab [Mohammed's uncle and an opponent] die and let him die! His wealth and attainments will not help him. He will be burned in Hell, and his wife will carry the firewood, with a palm fiber rope around her neck.*

1178 Fortunately for Mohammed, the Arabs of Medina were attracted to Islam's message. Since half of their town consisted of Jews, the Arabs of Medina were used to the concept of only one god.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# PUBLIC TEACHING

## CHAPTER 4

*3:32 Say: Obey Allah and His messenger, but if they reject it, then truly, Allah does not love those who reject the faith.*

At first Mohammed only told close friends and relatives about his message. Then he began to preach more publicly. The Koran condemns those who argue with Mohammed, since to argue against Islam is to be an enemy of Allah. The Koran gives an exact accounting of the arguments of the opponents of Mohammed.

The Meccans reasoned that if the all-knowing god of the universe was the author of the Koran, then why did he not deliver the entire Koran at once, instead of delivering it a piece at a time.

Mohammed continued to preach about Judgment Day, Paradise and Hell:

*43:68 My servants, there is no fear for you that day, nor will you grieve, because you have believed in Our signs and surrendered your will to Allah. You and your wives shall enter the Garden rejoicing. Trays and goblets of gold will be passed around to them, and they will have everything they desire. They will dwell there forever. This is the Garden that will be given you because of your good deeds in life. There is an abundance of fruit there for you to enjoy.*

*43:74 The guilty, however, will dwell forever in the torment of Hell. The punishment will not be lightened for them, and they will be overwhelmed with despair. We were not unjust toward them. It was they who were unjust. They will cry, "Malik [an angel who is a keeper of Hell], let your Lord put us out of our misery." He will respond, "No! You will remain here." Surely, We have brought the truth to you, but most of you hate the truth.*

*43:79 Do they make plots against you? We also make plots. Do they think that We do not hear their secrets and their private conversations? We do, and Our messengers are there to record them.*

1183 Mohammed continued to preach the glory of Allah and condemn the Quraysh religion. He told them their way of life was wrong and their ancestors would burn in Hell. He cursed their gods, disparaged their religion and divided the community, setting one tribesman against another. The Quraysh felt that this was unbearable. Tolerance had always been their

way. There were many clans, many gods, many religions. Another religion was fine, why did Mohammed demean the other religions?

## MORE ARGUMENTS WITH THE MECCANS

1188, 189 Another group of Meccans sent for Mohammed to see if they could settle this painful division of the tribes. They went over old ground, and again Mohammed refused the money and power that was offered. He said they needed to decide whether or not they wanted to suffer in the next world and he had the only solution. If they rejected him and his message, Allah would tend to them. One of the Quraysh said, “Well, if you speak for and represent the only true god, then perhaps his Allah could do something for them.”

“This land is dry. Let his Allah send them a river next to Mecca.”

“They were cramped being next to the mountains. Let his Allah open up some space by moving the mountains back.”

“Our best members are dead. Let your Allah renew them to life and in particular send back the best leader of our tribe, Qusayy. We will ask Qusayy whether or not you speak truly.”

1189 Mohammed said that he was sent as a messenger, not to do such work. They could either accept his message or reject it and be subject to the loss. Then one of them said, “If you won’t use your Allah to help us, then let your Allah help you. Send an angel to confirm you and prove to us that we are wrong. As long as the angel is present, let him make you a garden and fine home and present you with all the gold and silver you need. If you do this, we will know that you represent Allah and we are wrong.” The Quraysh wanted miracles as a proof.

1189 Mohammed did not perform miracles, because such things were not what Allah had appointed him to do.

1189 Then one of the Quraysh said, “Then let the heavens be dropped on us in pieces as you say your Lord could do. If you do not we will not believe.” Mohammed said that Allah could do that if Allah wished or he might not if he wished.

1189 They then said, “Did not your Lord know that we would ask you these questions? Then your Lord could have prepared you with better answers. And your Lord could have told you what to tell us if we don’t believe. We hear that you are getting this Koran from a man named Al Rahman from another town. We don’t believe in Al Rahman. Our

conscience is clear. We must either destroy you or you must destroy us. Bring your angels and we will believe them.”

1191 Mohammed would go to the Kabah and tell the Meccans what terrible punishments Allah had delivered to others in history who had not believed their prophets. This was now one of his constant themes. Allah destroyed others like them who did not listen to men like Mohammed.

1206 Some of the first Muslims were slaves and the Meccans prosecuted them when they could. Abu Bakr was a wealthy man and bought and freed six Muslim slaves to stop their persecution.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*



# STRUGGLES

## CHAPTER 5

*8:20 Believers! Be obedient to Allah and His messenger, and do not turn your backs now that you know the truth. Do not be like the ones who say, "We hear," but do not obey.*

1226 Umar's sister and husband submitted to Islam, but Umar, at this time, hated it. He strapped on his sword and went out looking for Mohammed. One of his friends saw him and told him that he should deal with his own family first. Did Umar not know that his sister and her husband had submitted to Islam? He went to their house, and when he got there, he could hear a verse from the Koran being recited. Umar stormed in and demanded to know more about the "garbage" he had just heard. He accused his sister of being a Muslim and hit her. When she cried, his heart softened. Umar read the Koran verses and became convinced that Mohammed was right and he went to Mohammed and submitted to Islam.

1231 With Umar's conversion, Islam became stronger and the Meccans decided to try a boycott as a non-violent way to pressure Mohammed. So the Quraysh posted a notice in the Kabah that no Meccan should marry any Muslim woman or sell them food.

1239 Some Meccans approached Mohammed and said, "Let us worship what you worship. Then you worship what we worship. If what you worship is better than what we worship, then we will take a share of your worship. And if what we worship is better, then you can take a share of that."

## THE SATANIC VERSES

T1192<sup>[1]</sup> Mohammed was always thinking of ways to persuade all the Meccans to accept Islam. It came to him that the three gods of the Quraysh could intercede with Allah. Mohammed said, "These are the exalted high flying cranes whose intercession is approved." The Meccans were delighted and happy. When Mohammed led prayers at the Kabah, all the Meccans, Muslim and Kafir, took part. The Quraysh hung about after the combined service and remarked how happy they were. The tribe had been unified in worship, as before Islam.

<sup>[1]</sup>. The T references are to Al Tabari's *History of Prophets and Kings*.

Then Mohammed said that he had been deceived by Satan. There was no bridge between Islam and the religion of the Meccans. The retraction by Mohammed made the relations between Islam and the Meccans far worse than it had ever been.

## THE POET'S SUBMISSION

1252 Al Dausi was a poet of some standing in Arabia. When he visited Mecca, Al Dausi went to the mosque and heard Mohammed preaching. He liked what he heard and followed Mohammed home. They spoke for some time and Al Dausi decided to submit to Islam.

1253 He then entered his home and told his wife, "Leave me, I want nothing to do with you." She cried, "Why?" Al Dausi said, "Islam has divided us and I now follow Mohammed." She replied, "Then your religion is my religion." He then instructed her in Islam.

The Koran is constant in its admonitions about with whom a Muslim should be friends.

4:144 *Believers! Do not take Kafirs as friends over fellow believers. Would you give Allah a clear reason to punish you?*

1260 There was one Christian in Mecca in whom Mohammed took an interest. He was a Christian slave who ran a booth in the market. Mohammed would go and speak with him at length. This led to the Quraysh claiming that what Mohammed said in the Koran, came from the Christian slave.

## THE NIGHT JOURNEY

1264 One night as he lay sleeping, Mohammed said that the angel nudged him with his foot. Mohammed awoke. They went out the door and found a white animal, half mule and half donkey. Its feet had wings and could move to the horizon at one step. Gabriel put Mohammed on the white animal and off they went to Jerusalem to the site of the Temple.

1264 There at the temple were Jesus, Abraham, Moses, and other prophets. Mohammed led them in prayer. Gabriel brought Mohammed two bowls. One was filled with wine and the other was filled with milk. Mohammed took the one with milk and drank it. That was the right choice.

1265 Aisha, Mohammed's favorite wife, used to say that Mohammed never left the bed that night, however, his spirit soared. When Mohammed

went out into Mecca to tell the story of his Night Journey, the owner of the home that Mohammed in which Mohammed had slept in sent her black, female slave to follow Mohammed and see how the Meccans reacted to his story.

1266 Mohammed reported that Abraham looked exactly like himself. Moses was a ruddy faced man, tall, thin, and with curly hair. Jesus was light skinned with reddish complexion and freckles and lank hair.

1269 Then he saw women hanging from their breasts. These women had given birth to bastards on their husbands. Mohammed said that Allah hates women who birth bastards. They deprive the true sons of their portion and learn the secrets of the harem.

1270 Abraham took Mohammed into Paradise and there was a beautiful woman with red lips. Mohammed asked who she belonged to, for she was very attractive to him. She belong to Zaid. When he got back, Mohammed told Zaid of this.

1272 Mohammed continued to preach Islam and condemn the old Arabic religions. There were those of the Quraysh who defended their culture and religion and argued with him. Mohammed called them mockers and cursed one of them, "Oh Allah, blind him and kill his son."

The Koran records the actual quotes of Mohammed's opponents.

*41:26 The Kafirs say, "Do not listen to this Koran. Instead speak during its reading so that you might gain the upper hand." But We will certainly give the Kafirs a taste of a terrible punishment, and We will repay them for their evil deeds. The reward of Allah's enemies is the Fire. The Fire will be their immortal home, a fitting reward for rejecting Our signs.*

1272 One day Mohammed stood with the angel, Gabriel, as the Quraysh performed the rituals of their religion. Among them were the leaders who defended their native culture and religion and opposed Mohammed. When the first leader passed by Gabriel, Gabriel threw a leaf in his face and blinded him. Gabriel then caused the second one to get dropsy which killed him. Gabriel caused the third man to develop an infection which killed him. The fourth man was caused later to step on a thorn which killed him. Gabriel killed the last man who dared to not worship Allah with a brain disease.

MOHAMMED'S PROTECTOR AND WIFE BOTH DIE

1278 Mohammed's protector was his uncle, Abu Talib. When Abu Talib fell ill, some of the leaders of the Quraysh came to his bedside. They said to him, "Please work out a compromise between Mohammed and us."

1278 So Abu Talib called Mohammed to his side. "Nephew, these men have come so that you can give them something and they can give you something." Mohammed said, "If they will give me one word, they can rule the Persians and the Arabs. And they must accept Allah as their Lord and renounce their gods."

1278 Mohammed turned his attention to his dying uncle. He asked him to become a Muslim and then Mohammed could intercede for him on judgment day. His uncle died as a Kafir.

Abu Talib had taken the orphan Mohammed into his home and raised him. He took Mohammed on caravan trading missions to Syria and taught him how to be a businessman. Abu Talib was the clan chief who protected Mohammed's life when the rest of Mecca wanted to harm him. Abu Talib was Mohammed's life and security, but he was damned to Hell.

After Abu Talib's death, the pressure on Mohammed was greater. It reached the point where one of the Quraysh threw dust at Mohammed. This was the worst that happened.

The death of his wife, Khadija, had no political effect, but it was a blow to Mohammed. His wife was his chief confidant, and she consoled him.

## MARRIAGE

M113<sup>[1]</sup> About three months after the death of Khadija Mohammed married Sauda, a widow and a Muslim.

<sup>[1]</sup> The M refers to the page of Sir William Muir's *The Life of Muhammad*.

M113 Abu Bakr had a daughter, Aisha, who was six years old. Soon after marrying Sauda, Mohammed was betrothed to Aisha, who was to become his favorite wife. The consummation of the marriage would not take place until she turned nine.

M031, 5977<sup>[1]</sup> *Aisha reported Mohammed having said: I saw you in a dream for three nights when an angel brought you to me in a silk cloth and he said: Here is your wife, and when I removed (the cloth) from your face, lo, it was yourself, so I said: If this is from Allah, let Him carry it out.*

<sup>[1]</sup> An M reference with a comma is Muslim's Hadith, *Sahih Muslim*.

1279 With Abu Talib's death, Mohammed needed political allies. Mohammed went to the city of Taif, about fifty miles away, with one servant. In Taif he met with three brothers who were politically powerful. Mohammed called them to Islam and asked them to help him in his struggles with those who would defend their native religions.

His trip was a failure and he returned to Mecca.

## THE BEGINNING OF POWER AND JIHAD IN MEDINA

Medina was about a ten-day journey from Mecca, but since ancient times the Medinans had come to Mecca for the fairs. Medina was half Jewish and half Arabian, and there was an ongoing tension between the two. The Jews worked as farmers and craftsmen and were literate. They were the wealthy class, but their power was slowly waning. In times past the Arabs had raided and stolen from the Jews who retaliated by saying that one day a prophet would come and lead them to victory over the Arabs. In spite of the tensions, the Arab tribe of Khazraj were allied with them.

1294 At the next fair in Mecca, many of the new Muslims from Medina showed up. During the early part of the night about seventy of them left the caravan to meet with Mohammed. He recited the Koran and said, "I invite your allegiance on the basis that you protect me as you would your children." The Medinans gave their oath. After the oath, one of them asked about their now-severed ties to the Jews of Medina. If they helped Mohammed with arms and they were successful would he go back to Mecca? Mohammed smiled and said, "No, blood is blood, and blood not to be paid for is blood not to be paid for." Blood revenge and its obligation were common to them. "I will war against them who war against you and be at peace with those at peace with you."

1312 One of the two women who gave their oath of allegiance was named Nusayba. She took part in the battle of Yamama and was wounded twelve times.

1299 One of the Medinans said to those who made the pledge, "Do you realize to what you are committing yourselves in pledging your support to this man? It is war against all. If you think that if you lose your property and your best are killed, and then you would give him up, then quit now. But if you think that you will be loyal to your oath if you lose your property and your best are killed, then take him, for it will profit you now and in



Paradise.” They asked what they would receive for their oath, Mohammed promised them Paradise. They all shook hands on the deal.

## BACK IN MEDINA

1304 Back in Medina the Muslims now practiced their new religion openly. But most of the Arabs still practiced their ancient tribal religions. The Muslims would desecrate the old shrines and ritual objects. They would even break into houses and steal ritual objects and throw them into the latrines. On one occasion they killed a dog and tied the dog’s body to a ritual object and threw it into the latrine.

## IMMIGRATION

1314 The Muslim Medinans had pledged to support Mohammed in war and to help the Muslims from Mecca. The Muslims in Mecca left and went to Medina. The Muslims from both Mecca and Medina were about to be tested.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

MEDINA

# THE BATTLE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD

## CHAPTER 6

*64:12 So obey Allah and His messenger. But if you turn your backs to them, Our messenger is not to blame, for his duty is only to deliver Our warning clearly. Allah! There is no god but Him! Let the faithful put their trust in Allah.*

Mohammed was one of the last to leave Mecca for Medina. In Medina Mohammed built the first mosque. There were now two types of Muslims in Medina. The native Medinan Muslims were called the Helpers, and the new arrivals were called the Immigrants.

1335 Ali left for Medina three days after Mohammed. Ali spent two nights in a town on the way to Medina. He noticed that every night a man came to the door of an unmarried Muslim woman. Ali questioned her about this. She told Ali that the man was bringing stolen Kafir ritual objects to her and that she would burn them.

## THE COVENANT

Mohammed drew up a political charter that included the basis of war. The Jews were included in the charter as allies of the Muslims. Mohammed was to be the arbitrator in disputes.

## MARRIAGE

M177 About seven months after arriving in Medina, Mohammed, aged fifty-three, consummated his marriage with Aisha, now age nine. She moved out of her father's house into what was to become a compound of apartments adjoining the mosque. She was allowed to bring her dolls into the harem due to her age.

## THE JEWS

In Mecca, Mohammed had divided the community into Muslims and those practicing the native Arabic religions. In Mecca he adopted all the classical Jewish stories to prove his prophecies and spoke well of the Jews. However, there were almost no Jews living in Mecca, and therefore, no one to differ with him.

In Medina, half of the population were Jews who let Mohammed know they disagreed with him. So in Medina, Mohammed argued with Jews as well as the Kafir Arabs. Even though there were very few in the town who were Christian, Mohammed argued against them as well. All Kafirs were verbally attacked in Medina.

1415 Thirteen years after he started preaching and one year after going to Medina, Mohammed began to prepare for war as commanded by Allah. He would fight his enemies: the Kafirs.

## THE FIRST RAIDS

1416-423 Mohammed sent his fighters out on seven armed raids to find a trade caravan headed to Mecca.

On the eighth try the jihadists found the caravan. They killed one man and captured the rest. The booty and captives were taken back to Medina. There was a small problem. They had raided and killed someone in a sacred month of peace. This violated Arabic tribal custom.

But the Koran said that killing the Kafirs in the sacred months was a moral act. For the Meccans to resist Islam was an offence against Allah, so the killing was justified.

## FIGHTING IN ALLAH'S CAUSE—BADR

The next Meccan caravan was large. When the Meccans got wind that the Muslims were going to attack, they sent out a small army to protect it. Mohammed sent out his men to either attack the caravan or do battle with the protecting army.

1433 Mohammed and his men headed out of Medina for what would prove to be one of the most important battles in all of history, a battle that would change the world forever.

1435 Mohammed was cheered. He said, "I see the enemy dead on the ground." They headed towards Badr and camped near there for the night. He sent several scouts to the well at Badr and the scouts found two slaves with water camels. They felt sure they were from the caravan and brought them back to Mohammed. Two of Mohammed's men questioned them as Mohammed was nearby praying. Mohammed wanted to know which group they were facing—the Quraysh caravan or the army under Abu Sufyan. The men replied that they were from the Quraysh. While

Mohammed prayed, his men began to beat them and torture the captured slaves.

1436 Mohammed told his men that the slaves told them the truth until they started to beat and torture them. Then the slaves had lied but it had been the lie that the Muslims wanted to hear. Mohammed asked the slaves how many of the Meccan army there were and who were the leaders? When they told him, he was delighted and told his warriors that Mecca had sent their best men to be slaughtered.

1440-444 The Meccans marched forth at daybreak. The battle began.

1445 Some arrows flew and one Muslim was killed. Mohammed addressed his army. “By Allah, every man who is slain this day by fighting with courage and advancing, not retreating, will enter Paradise.” One of his men had been eating dates said, “You mean that there is nothing between me and Paradise except being killed by the Quraysh?” He flung the dates to the side, picked up his sword and set out to fight. He got his wish and was killed later.

1452 The battle went well for the outnumbered Muslims. After the battle a jihadist brought Mohammed the head of his enemy, Abu Jahl. He said, “Here is the head of the enemy of Allah” and threw it at Mohammed’s feet. The Prophet said, “Praise be to Allah.”

1455 As the bodies were dragged to a well, one of the Muslims saw the body of his father thrown in. He said, “My father was a virtuous, wise, kind, and cultured man. I had hoped he would become a Muslim. He died a Kafir. His abode is hellfire forever.”

Before Islam the killing of kin and tribal brothers had been forbidden since the dawn of time. After Islam, brother would kill brother and sons would kill their fathers, fighting in Allah’s cause—jihad.

1454 The bodies of the Quraysh were thrown into a well. The Apostle of Allah leaned over the well and shouted at the bodies, “Oh people of the well, have you found what Allah promised to be true?” The Muslims were puzzled by his question. Mohammed explained that the dead could hear him.

1459 They set off for Medina with the spoils of war and the prisoners to be ransomed, except for one who had spoken against Mohammed. He was brought in front of the Prophet to be killed, but before the sword struck, he asked, “Who will care for my family?”

M230 The Prophet replied, “Hell!” After he fell dead, Mohammed said, “Unbeliever in Allah and his Prophet and his Book! I give thanks to Allah Who has killed you and made my eyes satisfied.”

I481 After war and victory there were the spoils of war to divide. One fifth went to the Apostle, Allah’s prophet.

## THE AFFAIR OF MOHAMMED’S DAUGHTER

I465 Among the prisoners was Mohammed’s son-in-law, Abul-As, who was also the nephew of Khadija, Mohammed’s wife. As a matter of fact, Khadija had asked Mohammed to look for a wife for her nephew, and it had been Mohammed who suggested marriage to their daughter, Zaynab. This was before Mohammed became a prophet and he never opposed Khadija at that time. When Mohammed went to Medina, the Meccans had tried to get Abul-As to divorce Mohammed’s daughter, but he refused, even though Abul-As had never become a Muslim himself. Mohammed was fond of him.

I465 But there was a second Meccan, Utba, who had married Mohammed’s second daughter. When the Meccans approached him to divorce Mohammed’s daughter, Utba agreed on the condition he could have his pick of two women. They agreed and Utba divorced Mohammed’s daughter.

I466 Abul-As was captured at Badr. His wife sent the money for his ransom and included with it a necklace that Khadija, Mohammed’s wife, had given her on her wedding day. When Mohammed saw the necklace, he softened and asked the captors to forgo the ransom and return Abul-As to his daughter. The captors agreed.

I467 Mohammed set a condition that his daughter, Zaynab, be allowed to come and see him. So when Abul-As returned to Mecca, he told Zaynab to go to Medina to see Mohammed. She prepared and left on a camel with her brother-in-law. The Meccans decided to chase after them and caught her on the road. One of the Meccans approached with his spear and threatened her. The story is vague, but she may have been pregnant and the panic caused her to abort. Her brother-in-law drew his bow and threatened to kill all of the Meccans.

I467 The leader of the Meccans asked him to unstring his bow and talk. He said, “Look, we have just been humiliated by Mohammed, and now you are taking his daughter to him very publicly. Come back to Mecca and wait

until the anger has died down and then leave quietly.” And that is what they did. Later he took her away in the middle of the night.

1469 Later when Mohammed sent out raiders, he told them that if they found one of the two men who threatened his daughter, they were to burn them to death. Later, he told them not to burn them because that was Allah’s punishment. They should just kill them, instead.

1470 Zaynab continued to live in Medina, while Abul-As lived in Mecca. Abul-As headed a trading expedition to Syria. Mohammed warriors attacked the caravan and captured all of the goods, while Abul-As escaped to Medina where he hid out with Zaynab. Mohammed agreed that he was not to be harmed, but that he and Zaynab could not have sex since she was a Muslim.

1470 Mohammed then went to the warriors who had taken Abul-As’s property and asked them to return it and they did. Abul-As then submitted to Islam. He and Zaynab were then considered to be married again.

## THE RAID ON THE TRIBE OF B. SULAYM

1540-543, T1365 Seven days after Mohammed returned from Badr, there were four more armed raids, but no contact with the enemy, the Kafirs.

Mohammed had become a political force unlike any ever seen before in history. The fusion of religion and politics with a universal mandate created a permanent historic force. Muslims believer will be no peace until all the world is Islam. The spoils of war will provide the wealth of Islam. The awe of Mohammed is the fear of Allah.

B1,7,331 *The Prophet said, “I have been given five things which were not given to anyone else before me.*

*1. Allah made me victorious by awe, by His frightening my enemies for a distance of one month’s journey.*

*2. The earth has been made for me and for my followers a place for praying and to perform my rituals, therefore anyone of my followers can pray wherever the time of a prayer is due.*

*3. The spoils of war has been made Halal (lawful) for me yet it was not lawful for anyone else before me.*

*[...]*

Mohammed left Mecca as a preacher and prophet. He entered Medina with about 150 Muslim converts. After a year in Medina there were about

250-300 Muslims and most of them were very poor. After the battle of Badr, a new Islam emerged. Mohammed rode out of Medina as a politician and general. Islam became an armed political force with a religious motivation, jihad.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*



# THE JEWS

## CHAPTER 7

*9:63 Do they not know that whoever opposes Allah and His Messenger will abide in the Fire of Hell, where they will remain forever? This is the great shame.*

When Mohammed arrived in Medina about half the town were Jews. There were three tribes of Jews and two tribes of Arabs. Almost none of the Jews had Hebrew names. They were Arabs to some degree. At the same time many of the Arabs' religious practices contained elements of Judaism. The Jews were farmers and tradesmen and lived in their own fortified quarters. In general, they were better educated and more prosperous than the Arabs.

Before Mohammed arrived, there had been bad blood and killing among the tribes. The last battle had been fought between the two Arab tribes, but each of the Jewish tribes had joined the battle with their particular Arab allies. In addition to that tension between the two Arab tribes, there was a tension between the Jews and the Arabs. The division of the Jews and fighting on different sides was condemned by Mohammed. The Torah preached that the Jews should be unified, and they failed in this.

All of these quarrelsome tribal relationships were one reason that Mohammed was invited to Medina, but the result was further polarization, not unity. The new split was between Islam and those Arabs and their Jewish partners who resisted Islam.

1351 About this time, the leaders of the Jews spoke out against Mohammed. The rabbis began to ask him difficult questions. Doubts and questions arose about his doctrine. But for Mohammed, doubts about Allah were evil. However, two of the Jewish Arabs joined with Mohammed as Muslims. They believed him when he said that he was the Jewish prophet that came to fulfill the Torah.

## THE REAL TORAH IS IN THE KORAN

Mohammed said repeatedly that the Jews and Christians corrupted their sacred texts in order to conceal the fact that he was prophesied in their scriptures. The stories in the Koran are similar to those of the Jew's scriptures, but they make different points. In the Koran, all of the stories found in Jewish scripture indicated that Allah destroyed those cultures that

did not listen to their messengers. According to Mohammed, the scriptures of the Jews had been changed to hide the fact that Islam is the true religion and that he was the last prophet of the Jews.

1369 The Jews' sins are so great that Allah has changed them into apes. Still they will not learn and refuse to admit that Mohammed is their prophet. They know full well the truth and hide and confuse others. Even when they say to Mohammed they believe, they conceal their resistance.

*2:63 And remember, Children of Israel, when We made a covenant with you and raised Mount Sinai before you saying, "Hold tightly to what We have revealed to you and keep it in mind so that you may guard against evil." But then you turned away, and if it had not been for Allah's grace and mercy, you surely would have been among the lost. And you know those among you who sinned on the Sabbath. We said to them, "You will be transformed into despised apes." So we used them as a warning to their people and to the following generations, as well as a lesson for the Allah-fearing.*

1370 The Jews have understood the truth of Mohammed and then changed their scriptures to avoid admitting that Mohammed is right.

## MOHAMMED TRULY FOLLOWS THE RELIGION OF ABRAHAM

1375 A group of rabbis came to Mohammed and asked him, "Why does a boy resemble his mother if the sperm comes from the father?" Mohammed replied that a man's fluid is thick and white and a woman's fluid is yellow and thin. The child resembles the mother or the father depending upon whose fluid was on top.

1394 The Jews asked Mohammed to deliver judgment against a married man and a married woman who had committed adultery. Mohammed delivered the full judgment found in the Torah, which was stoning. The Jews had stopped using capital punishment. So the couple was brought to the mosque and they were stoned to death. When the man felt the first stone, he crouched over the woman until they were both dead.

[B3,41,596;B4,51,9;B7,63,216;B9,83,15;B9,83,16;B9,83,18;B9,83,23;]

*During the lifetime of Mohammed, a Jew attacked a girl and took some silver ornaments she was wearing and crushed her head between two stones. Her relatives brought her to Mohammed while she was taking her last breaths and was unable to speak. He asked*

*her who had killed her, and mentioned different names. She shook her head with each name, until Mohammed finally mentioned the name of the criminal, and she nodded. So the Jew was questioned until he confessed. Then Mohammed ordered that the head of that Jew be crushed between two stones.*

## AN OMINOUS CHANGE

1381 In Mecca, Mohammed spoke well of the Jews, who were very few. In Medina there were many Jews and his relations with them were tense. Up to now Mohammed had led prayer facing in the direction of Jerusalem. Now the *kiblah*, direction of prayer, was changed to the Kabah in Mecca. Some of the Jews came to him and asked why he had changed the direction of prayer. After all, he said that he followed the religion of Abraham.

Since Islam is the successor to Judaism, Allah was the successor to Jehovah. It was actually Allah who had been the deity of the Jews and the Jews had deliberately hidden this fact by corrupting the scriptures. For this, Muslims believe, the Jews have been cursed.

## THE AFFAIR OF THE JEWS OF QAYNUQA

1545 There were three tribes of Jews in Medina. The Beni Qaynuqa were goldsmiths and lived in a stronghold in their quarters. It is said by Mohammed that they broke the treaty that had been signed when Mohammed came to Medina. How they did this is unclear.

1545 Mohammed assembled the Jews in their market and said: "Oh Jews, be careful that Allah does not bring vengeance upon you like what happened to the Quraysh. Become Muslims. You know that I am the prophet that was sent you. You will find that in your scriptures."

1545 They replied: "Oh, Mohammed, you seem to think that we are your people. Don't fool yourself. You may have killed and beaten a few merchants of the Quraysh, but we are men of war and real men."

1546 Some time later Mohammed besieged the Beni Qaynuqa Jews in their quarters. Neither of the other two Jewish tribes came to their support. Finally the Jews surrendered, expecting to be slaughtered after their capture.

But one of the Jews' old allies persuaded Mohammed not to kill them. Mohammed exiled the Jews and took all of their wealth and goods.

## THE RAID TO AL QARADA

1547 Mohammed's victory at Badr and ongoing jihad caused the Quraysh to choose a different route to Syria. They hired a new guide to take them over the new route. Mohammed had received intelligence about their route and sent a party to raid them. They were carrying a great deal of silver when the caravan stopped at a watering hole. The Muslims surprised them and the Quraysh managed to escape but Mohammed's men were able to steal all the caravan's goods, including the silver. The stolen goods were delivered to Mohammed in Medina.

### THE ASSASSINATION OF AL ASHRAF, THE JEW

1548 When Al Ashraf, a Jew of Medina, heard that two of his friends had been killed at Badr, he said that it was better to be in the grave than on earth with Mohammed. So the "enemy of Allah" composed some poems bewailing the loss of his friends and attacking Islam.

T1369 Then Al Ashraf wrote a sexual poem about a Muslim woman.

1551 When Mohammed heard of Al Ashraf's critical poetry about his politics, he said, "Who will rid me of Al Ashraf?" A Muslim said, "I will kill him for you." Days later, Mohammed found out that his assassin was not doing anything, including eating or drinking. Mohammed summoned him and asked what was going on. The man replied that he had taken on a task that was too difficult for him to do. Mohammed said that it was a duty which he should try to do. The assassin said, "Oh Apostle of Allah, I will have to tell a lie." The Prophet said, "Say what you like, you are free in the matter."

1552 Through the use of lies three Muslims were able to kill Al Ashraf. When they returned to Mohammed, he was praying. They told him that they had killed the enemy of Allah. Their attack terrorized all the Jews. There was no Jew in Medina who was not afraid.

### KILL ANY JEW THAT FALLS INTO YOUR POWER

1554 The Apostle of Allah said, "Kill any Jew who falls into your power." Hearing this Muhayyisa fell upon a Jewish merchant who was a business associate and killed him. Muhayyisa's brother was not a Muslim and asked him how he could kill a man who had been his friend and partner in many business deals. The Muslim said that if Mohammed had asked him to kill his brother he would have done it immediately. His brother said, "You mean that if Mohammed said to cut off my head you would do it?" "Yes," was the

reply. The older brother then said, “By Allah, any religion which brings you to this is marvelous.” And he decided then and there to become a Muslim.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# THE CHRISTIANS

## CHAPTER 8

*24:52 It is such as obey Allah and His Apostle, and fear Allah and do right, that will win.*

1404 While some Christians were in Medina, they argued religion with Mohammed. They held forth with the doctrine of the Trinity and the divinity of Christ. Mohammed later laid out the Islamic version of the Christian doctrine. The Koran tells in detail the true story of Jesus, who is just another of Allah's prophets, and that the Trinity of the Christians is Allah, Jesus and Mary.

1406 No one has power except through Allah. Allah gave the prophet Jesus the power of raising the dead, healing the sick, making birds of clay and having them fly away. Allah gave Jesus these signs as a mark of his being a prophet. But Allah did not give the powers of appointing kings, or the ability to change night to day. This lack of power show that Jesus was a man, not part of the Trinity. If he were part of God, then all powers would have been in his command. Then he would not have to have been under the dominion of kings.

### MARY, THE MOTHER OF JESUS

1407 Imran was the father of Moses, Aaron and Mary, the mother of Jesus<sup>[1]</sup>.

<sup>[1]</sup>. This version of history is at variance with Christian doctrine. Jesus was born 1600 years after Moses.

*19:16 And mention Mary in the Scripture, when she withdrew from her family to a place in the East. She took a veil to screen herself from them. Then We sent Our spirit [Gabriel] to her in the form of a perfect man. She said, "I seek protection from you with Merciful Allah. If you fear Him, then do not come near me."*

*19:19 He said, "I am merely your Lord's messenger. I come to announce to you the gift of a holy son."*

*19:20 She said, "How can I have a son when no man has touched me, and I am chaste?"*

19:21 *He said, "Even so, it will happen. Your Lord says, 'That is easy for Me.' We will make him a sign for all men and a mercy from Us. It is something that is decreed." And she conceived him, and she withdrew with him to a remote place. When the pain of childbirth drove her to the trunk of a palm-tree, she said, "If only I had died before this."*

19:24 *But a voice from below her said, "Do not grieve; your Lord has provided a stream beneath you. Shake the trunk of the palm-tree towards yourself; it will drop fresh ripe dates upon you. So eat and drink and dry your eyes. And if you should see any man, say, 'I have promised a fast to Allah. I will speak to no one today.'"*

1407-8 Christ spoke in the cradle and then spoke to men as a grown man. Speaking from the cradle is a sign of his being a prophet. Christ's prophethood was confirmed by making clay birds fly. By Allah's power, Christ healed the blind, the lepers, and raised the dead.

19:27 *Later, she brought the baby to her people, carrying him in her arms. They said, "Mary, you have come with an amazing thing. Sister of Aaron, your father was not a wicked man, and your mother was not unchaste." But she merely pointed to the baby. They said, "How can we speak with an infant in a cradle?" The child said, "Surely, I am the servant of Allah. He has given me the Book and has made me a prophet. He has made me blessed wherever I am; and has urged me to pray and give alms, as long as I live; and to be dutiful to my mother; and He has not made me arrogant or miserable. The peace of Allah was on me the day I was born, and will be on me the day that I die; and on the day I will be resurrected."*

19:34 *This was Jesus, the son of Mary; this is a statement of truth about which they [Christians] dispute. It does not befit the majesty of Allah to father a son. Glory be to Him! When He decrees something, He only needs to say, "Be," and it is. Surely, Allah is my Lord and your Lord, so serve Him. That is the right path.*

1408 Christ only comes through Allah. Christ's signs of being a prophet come only from Allah. Jesus enjoins others to worship Allah, not him. But when the people refused to hear him, the Disciples came forth to help him with his mission. The Disciples were servants of Allah and were Muslims just like Christ.

1409 Christ was not crucified. When the Jews plotted against Christ, they found Allah to be the best plotter. Allah took Jesus up directly to him and will refute those who say he was crucified and was resurrected. On the final day, the Day of Resurrection, those who follow Christ but do not believe in his divinity will be blessed. Those who insist that Christ is God, part of the Trinity, and reject true faith will be punished in Hell.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*



# JIHAD, A SETBACK

## CHAPTER 9

4:14 *But those who disobey Allah and His Messenger and go beyond His limits, will be led into the Fire to live forever, and it will be a humiliating torment!*

### THE BATTLE OF UHUD

The Meccans had lost at the battle of Badr, but they raised an army and returned to fight the Muslims at Uhud, near Medina.

1560 When they saw the Meccans, Mohammed said, “Let there be no fighting until I give the word.” Mohammed placed 50 archers to protect his rear and flank. They must not move but hold that ground.

1562 The morrow came and the battle was to begin. Now the Meccans had brought their women for the sole purpose urging on the men. Men do not want to be cowards in front of women. The women began to beat their tambourines and chant poetry:

*If you advance we will hug you  
And place soft rugs beneath you  
If you retreat we will leave you  
Leave and no more love you.*

1557 Hind, a Meccan woman, had a black slave called Washi, who was an expert with the javelin. She told Washi that if he could kill Hamza [Hamza had killed Hind’s uncle at Badr.] he would give him his freedom. On the way to the battle, whenever Hind saw Washi, she would say, “Come on, you father of blackness, satisfy your vengeance and ours.”

1557 During the battle Washi hung near the edge of the fighting and looked for Hamza. Hamza fought like a lion as Washi watched. As Hamza fought one of the Meccans, he said, “Come here, you son of a clitoris cutter. “ Hamza then killed the man whose mother performed the female circumcision [removed the girl’s clitoris, common surgery in Arabia.] Then Washi threw his javelin and killed Hamza. Washi was now free and left the field.

The Muslims lost because the archers did not hold their position, and instead they ran to the Meccan camp to steal their goods.

The Meccans won, but they did not press their advantage and let Mohammed escape.

1578 Hind and other women went through the battlefield and mutilated the corpses. Hind cut off their ears and noses to make them into bracelets. Hind removed Hamza's liver and chewed it raw.

*We have rewarded you for Badr  
Continued war is violent  
I was broken by the loss of my father and brother  
I have fulfilled my vengeance  
Washi has slacked the burning in my breast  
Thank you Washi. — Hind*

1586 The dead Muslims were buried in the battlefield. Mohammed said, "I testify that all who are wounded in jihad will be raised by Allah with his bleeding wounds smelling like the finest perfume." Mohammed heard the women weeping for their dead, but he wanted wailing for his uncle Hamza as well. So the women wailed for Hamza and Mohammed felt better.

The Muslims had lost because they did not obey Mohammed's orders. So the Koran said that from now on Muslims must obey Mohammed in all things. They were not to lose courage, as there would be opportunity in the future to get more war booty.

1606 The Koran said that the success that the Kafirs experienced was temporary. They would grow in their evil and be punished. Allah would not leave the believers in this state. But this trial would separate the weak from the strong. Those who have wealth should spend it on jihad.

## ASSASSINATION AS JIHAD

M276 After Uhud, several tribes allied themselves under the leadership of Sufyan Ibn Khalid. Mohammed dispatched an assassin to kill him, for without his leadership the coalition would fall apart. So the assassin, Abdullah, joined Sufyan's forces and waited until he was alone with him. He killed Sufyan and cut off his head and went back to Medina.

M276 Abdullah then went straight to Mohammed. Mohammed welcomed him and asked him how it went. Abdullah presented Mohammed with the head of his enemy. Mohammed was gratified and presented him with his walking stick. He said, "This is a token between you and me on the day of resurrection. Very few will have such to lean on in that day." Abdullah attached it to his sword scabbard.

## THE RAID ON THE MUSTALIQ TRIBE

1725 When Mohammed heard that the Arab tribe, the Mustaliq, were opposed to him and were gathering against him, he set out with his army to attack. He found them at a watering hole and combat started. Islam was victorious and the Mustaliq and their women, children, and goods were taken as spoils of war and distributed to the fighters.

1729 The captives of the tribe of Mustaliq were parceled out as spoils. There was a ransom price set upon their heads. If the ransom were not paid then the people were treated as spoils and slaves. Now, one was a beautiful woman with a high price on her. She came to Mohammed and asked him to see if the price could be reduced. Mohammed had a better idea. He paid the ransom and the beautiful woman became wife number seven.

1729 This marriage had a side effect. The captives were now related to Mohammed's wife. They were all released without ransom.

## THE DEATH OF A POETESS

1996 There was a poetess who wrote a poem against Islam. Mohammed said, "Who will rid me of Marwan's daughter?" One of his followers, a blind man, heard him and on that very night he went to the woman's home to kill her.

M239 The blind assassin was able to do the work in the dark as the woman slept. Her other children lay in the room, but her babe lay on her breast. The stealthy assassin removed the child and drove the knife into her with such force that he pinned her to the bed.

1996 In the morning he went to Mohammed and told him. Mohammed said, "You have helped Allah and his Apostle."

M239 Mohammed turned to the people in the mosque, he said, "If you wish to see a man who has assisted Allah and his Prophet, look here." Omar cried, "What, the blind Omeir!" "No," said Mohammed, "call him Omeir the Seeing."

1996 The poetess had five sons and the assassin went to them and taunted them saying, "I killed Bint Marwan, Oh sons. Withstand me if you can; don't keep me waiting." Islam became powerful that day and many became Muslims when they saw the power of Islam.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# JIHAD, THE JEWS SUBMIT

## CHAPTER 10

*58:20 Those who oppose Allah and His Messenger will be laid low. Allah has declared, "Surely I will be victorious, along with My messengers." Truly Allah is strong and mighty.*

### CLEANSING

Mohammed attacked the second of the two Jewish tribes in Medina. The Jews would not admit that he was a real prophet and for this they would pay. Mohammed put the Jews under siege and burned their date palm plantations. The other Jews would not help them. They cut a deal and got to leave alive with all they could carry.

Since there was no actual fighting and the jihadists did no work, Mohammed got all of the booty.

The burning of the date palms violated Arabic tribal customs. But the Koran said that it was a moral act against the Kafir Jews.

### THE BATTLE OF THE TRENCH

The Meccans came back to Medina to fight against Islam. But Mohammed had spies in Mecca, so he knew they were coming. At the suggestion of a Muslim who had been to Persia, the Muslims built a defensive trench.

1677-683 Mohammed was able to use his agents to sow discord among those allied against him. The trench defense frustrated the Meccans. The weather was bad, and the allies were distrustful of each other. In terms of actual combat only a handful of men were killed over the twenty-day siege. The Meccans broke camp and went back home. It was a victory for Mohammed.

1680 While the armies were facing each other, Hassan was back at a fort. A Jew was seen going around the fort and Hassan was afraid that he would find a way in. Hassan's wife said that Hassan should go down and kill the Jew. But Hassan was a poet who wrote satire for Mohammed and he was not about to take up arms and told his wife so. The wife took a club and went outside and beat the Jew to death. She went back to the fort and told Hassan to go and strip the body. [The killing was an act of jihad and the

killer got to take the goods as booty.] But Hassan refused to do even that much.

## THE SOLUTION FOR THE JEWS

1684 That same day the angel Gabriel came to Mohammed at noon. He asked if Mohammed were through fighting. Gabriel and the angels were going to attack the last Jewish tribe in Medina. Gabriel said, "Allah commands you to go to the Jews. I am headed there now to shake their stronghold."

Mohammed put the Jews under siege. They surrendered and submitted to the judgment of Saed, an old ally.

1688 The Jews decided to let a Muslim they thought was their friend, Saed, deliver judgment if they surrendered to Mohammed. Saed's judgment was simple. Kill all the men. Take their property and take the women and children as captives. Mohammed said, "You have given the judgment of Allah."

1690 The captives were taken into Medina. They dug trenches in the market place of Medina. It was a long day, but 800 Jews were beheaded that day. Mohammed and his twelve-year-old wife, Aisha, sat and watched the slaughter the entire day and into the night. The Apostle of Allah had every male Jew killed.

[B5,59,362]

*The Bani An-Nadir and Bani Quraiza violated their peace treaty with Mohammed. He exiled the former and treated the latter with lenience, allowing them to remain in their lands in Medina. When the Bani Quraiza fought Mohammed again, he killed their men and distributed their women and children as slaves among the Muslims. Those who came to Mohammed and embraced Islam were granted safety. He exiled all Jews from Medina.*

1691 Only one of the female Jews was killed. She sat with Aisha the entire time the males were being beheaded and laughed and talked. Then a voice called the Jew's name and Aisha asked why she was being called. The Jew said that she had done something. She was taken away and beheaded.

1693 Mohammed took the property, wives and children of the Jews, and divided it up amongst the Muslims. Mohammed took his one-fifth of the slaves and sent a Muslim with the female Jewish slaves to a nearby city

where the women were sold for pleasure. Mohammed invested the money from the sale of the female slaves for horses and weapons.

1693 There was one last share of the spoils for Mohammed. The most beautiful Jewess became his slave for pleasure.

1696-7 In the battle of the Trench it was Allah who had won the day. Allah gives the Muslim his strength and will. No matter what the Kafirs do Allah will triumph. Allah totally approves of the killing of the Jews, enslaving the women and children. It was good to give the Jew's property to the Muslim warriors. After all, Allah wanted it done and helped to do it.

*33:25 And Allah drove back the Kafirs in their wrath, and they gained nothing by it. Allah aided the believers in the war, for Allah is strong and mighty. He brought down some of the People of the Book [the Jews] out of their fortresses to aid the confederates and to strike terror into their hearts. Some you killed, and others you took captive. He made you heirs of their land, their homes, and their possessions, and even gave you another land on which you had never before set foot. Allah has power over everything. [800 male Jews were executed, their property taken, and women and children enslaved.]*

## THE KILLING OF THE JEW, SALLAM

1714-6 A Jew named Sallam helped to plan and organize the confederation of the tribes that attacked Mohammed in the Battle of the Trench. Mohammed sent five Muslim men to assassinate Sallam. When the men had done their work, they returned to Mohammed and fell to arguing as to who actually killed Sallam. Mohammed demanded to see their swords. He examined them one by one and then pointed to the sword that had been the killing weapon. It had food on it still from the thrust to the victim's stomach.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# JIHAD, THE FIRST DHIMMIS

## CHAPTER 11

*4:80 Those who obey the Messenger, obey Allah. As for those who turn away from you, We have not sent you to watch over them.*

### TREATY OF AL HUDAYBIYA

Mohammed decided it was time for the Muslims to make a pilgrimage to Mecca and the Kabah. But the Meccans would not let the Muslims enter, even though they were unarmed and in pilgrimage clothing. So Mohammed parlayed with the Meccans.

1747 They drew up a treaty to the effect that there would be no war for ten years, there would be no hostilities, and no one could convert to Islam without their guardians' permission. In turn the Muslims could come next year and stay for three days in Mecca, but they could not enter this year.

1748 Many of the Muslims were depressed. Mohammed had promised that they could enter Mecca. Now they could not. Before they left they sacrificed the camels and shaved their heads, doing as many of the rituals as they could without getting into Mecca.

1749 On the way back to Medina, Mohammed added to the Koran, the sura called Victory, about this treaty. Those who held back [the desert Arabs, Bedouins] and did not come on the pilgrimage would not profit by receiving any spoils of war. And there was more war to come in the future.

1750 This was a victory for Islam. The government of Mecca dealt with Mohammed as an independent political power. Because of this power many more Arabs were attracted to Islam.

1755 The treaty declared that Mohammed was to return the women of Medina who migrated from Mecca. But Mohammed decided to return the dowries of those women who had come from Mecca to become Muslims without permission of their guardians. Normally, he would have kept the women and the dowries. He also asked the Meccans to return the dowries of those Kafir women who had left Medina to live in Mecca.

### KHAYBAR

1756 After the treaty of Al Hudaybiya, Mohammed stayed in Medina for about two months before he collected his army and marched to the forts of

Khaybar, a community of wealthy Jewish farmers who lived in a village of separate forts about 100 miles from Medina.

1758 Mohammed seized the forts one at a time. Among the captives was a beautiful Jewess named Safiya. Mohammed took her for his sexual pleasure. One of his men had first chosen her for his own slave of pleasure, but Mohammed traded him two of her cousins for Safiya. Mohammed always got first choice of the spoils of war and the women.

1759 On the occasion of Khaybar, Mohammed put forth new orders about sex with captive women. If the woman was pregnant, she was not to be used for sex until after the birth of the child. Nor were any women to be used for sex who were unclean with regards to the Muslim laws about menstruation.

1764 Mohammed knew that there was a large treasure hidden somewhere in Khaybar, so he brought forth the Jew who he thought knew the most about it and questioned him. The Jew denied any knowledge. Mohammed told one of his men, "Torture the Jew until you extract what he has." So the Jew was staked on the ground, and a small fire built on his chest to get him to talk. When the man was nearly dead and still would not talk, Mohammed had him released and taken to one of his men whose brother had been killed in the fight. This Muslim got the pleasure of cutting off the tortured Jew's head.

1763 Mohammed had his freed slave, Bilal, to go and get the two best looking women and bring them to him. Bilal brought the women past the dead Jews. One of them began to shriek and pour dust on her head. Mohammed said, "Take this she-devil away from me." Then he threw his mantle over Safiya so that the men would know that she was his. Mohammed then told Bilal, "Do you not have any compassion, bringing these two women past their dead husbands?"

[B2,14,68;B3,34,431;B3,34,437;B4,52,143;B5,59,512;B5,59,513;B5,59,522;B5,59,523]

*After conquering Khaybar, Mohammed was told of the beauty of Safiya, whose husband had been killed. She was a captive, but he freed her as a marriage gift, and so chose her for his bride. He brought her with the army until they reached Sidd-as-Sahba, and he married her after she became clean of her menstrual cycle.*

1764 At Khaybar Mohammed instituted the first dhimmis. After the best of the goods were taken from the Jews, Mohammed left them to work the land. Since his men knew nothing about farming, and the Jews were skilled at it, they worked the land and gave Mohammed half of their profits.



1765 After Mohammed rested, the wife of Sallam prepared a meal for him. She asked which piece of meat he preferred and gave it to him. He chewed a bite and spit it out and declared it to be poisoned. He asked the Jewess about this and she agreed it was poisoned. She said that after what he had done to other Jews, she wanted to rid herself of him if he were only a king. If he were a prophet, he would know not to eat it. The Muslim at the table with Mohammed did not spit his meat out and he died.

1767 It was time for Safiya's wedding, so she was 'beautified' by a Muslim for her wedding night with Mohammed. When Mohammed awoke in the morning he found a young Muslim walking around his tent with a drawn sword. He asked what he was doing. He said, "I was afraid for you. You killed her husband, tortured her father to death, and destroyed her people." Mohammed asked Allah to preserve the fighter as well as he preserved Mohammed.

1768 Mohammed gave the women a small share of the booty. He gave a portion of Khaybar to his wives as well.

## FADAK

1777 The Jews of Fadak panicked when they saw what Mohammed did at Khaybar. They would be next, so they surrendered to Mohammed without a fight. Since there was no battle Mohammed got all of their goods and they worked the land and gave half to Mohammed each year. They became dhimmis like those of Khaybar.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# MOHAMMED'S FINAL JIHAD

## CHAPTER 12

3:53 *"Our Lord! We believe in what Thou hast revealed, and we follow the Apostle; then write us down among those who bear witness."*

### MECCA CONQUERED

The treaty of Hudaibiya was broken by a fight between allies of Mohammed and allies of Mecca. Mohammed took advantage of this and attacked Mecca.

1810 A Muslim of Medina, Hatib, wrote a letter to the Meccans saying that Mohammed was coming to Mecca. He then paid a woman to take the letter to Mecca. She concealed the letter in her hair. Mohammed received information that she was carrying the letter and sent two men after her. They caught up with her, searched her and found nothing. Ali ordered her to produce the letter or they would strip her naked. She gave them the letter.

1810 When they returned to Medina, Mohammed called for Hatib and demanded an answer. He said that he was not a man of importance and he was just trying to take care of family left in Mecca. Umar wanted to behead him, but Mohammed pointed out that Hatib had fought at Badr and could do as he pleased.

1811 As a result of the fighting between a tribe allied with the Meccans and a tribe allied with Mohammed, he marched on Mecca with 10,000 men to punish them.

The Meccans decided to yield without a fight. The Meccan leader submitted to Islam. The leader went ahead and announced to the citizens that Mohammed's army was coming. They were not to resist but to go into their houses, his house or the Kabah and that they would be safe.

1819 Mohammed had told his commanders only to kill those who resisted. Otherwise they were to bother no one except for those who had spoken against Mohammed. The list of those to be killed:

- One of Mohammed's secretaries, who had said that when he was recording Mohammed's Koranic revelations sometimes Mohammed let the secretary insert better speech. This caused him to lose faith and he became an apostate (left Islam).
- Two singing girls who had sung satires against Mohammed.

- A Muslim tax collector who had become an apostate.
- A man who had insulted Mohammed.

T1642 Hind was the Meccan woman who had mutilated Hamza at the battle of Uhud. When she came before Mohammed to become a Muslim, he told her that her duties included not killing children. She replied that she had raised them and not killed them. But when they were grown Mohammed had killed both of her sons at Badr.

1821 Mohammed went to the Kabah, prayed and then destroyed all of the religious art in Mecca.

Mohammed announced the end of all feuds, all revenge killings, and payment of blood money. Veneration of the ancestors was over.

### KHALID'S EXPEDITIONS

1834 Mohammed sent Khalid out to the tribes around the Meccan countryside.

1837 Khalid attacked one tribe, bound and beheaded many of them. One of those who was tied asked to be taken over to a girl. The man said, "Good bye, though life is at an end." He then quoted a love poem to her:

*Was I not a worthy lover?  
Did I not undertake journeys day and night for you?  
Reward me with love before tragedy  
Reward me with love before the distance is too great  
Even when our tribe's troubles took my attention  
Even then my love was there.*

1838 She replied, "May your life be lengthened for years." He was taken away and beheaded.

1840 Mohammed sent Khalid to an ancient temple near Mecca that was used by several tribes for worship. When Khalid got there, he destroyed it completely.

### THE BATTLE OF HUNAIN

1840 When Mohammed took Mecca, the surrounding Arab tribes saw that if he were not opposed, he would become King of Arabia. The Hawazin Arabs decided to oppose him under the leadership of Malik.

1842 Mohammed sent a spy to gather intelligence about the Arabs. When he received the information, he began preparing for jihad. He first borrowed

armor and lances from a wealthy Meccan and then marched out with 12,000 men.

1845 The army descended into a broad area and they found the enemy prepared and hiding, waiting to attack. The Muslim troops broke and ran. Mohammed stood in his stirrups and called out, "Where are you going? Come to me, the Apostle of Allah." Most of the men continued to retreat except his battle-hardened core troops who regrouped around him. A group of about 100 led the charge to turn the tide. They were steadfast. Mohammed looked at the carnage and said, "Now the oven is hot!"

1847 One of the Muslim women was near Mohammed and said about those who were retreating, "Kill those who flee just as you kill those who are attacking us."

Once again, Islam defeated the Kafirs.

## BATTLE OF TAIF

1872 Mohammed attacked al Taif, a walled town. The Muslims pitched their tents near the walls and settled down for a siege. Mohammed had brought two wives and put them into two tents. The battle did not go well and the town was successful in resisting jihad. Mohammed had the fighters destroy all of their vineyards.

1873 One of the Muslim women asked Mohammed if she could have the jewelry of two of the richest women in Taif. Mohammed said she could but he doubted that they were going to succeed. Shortly after that he called off the attack. On the way back, one of the Muslims said that he did not mind losing the battle, but he did regret not getting a woman from Taif for a slave. The people of Taif were noted for their intelligence and he wanted to breed the slave to have smart children from her.

## THE HAWAZIN

1877 The Hawazin had been beaten by the Muslims. As Mohammed came back from Taif, he stopped to deal with them. They had submitted to Islam and wanted relief from their loss. Their leaders pointed out to Mohammed that some of his prisoners were members of his foster family. Mohammed gave the leaders a choice. They could have their cattle and goods back or their wives and sons back. They choose their families.

1877 Mohammed asked the various tribal leaders of his army if they would turn the Hawazin loose. Most of them did, but two tribes said no, so

Mohammed offered them six camels for each person they freed. The debt would be paid from the next battle. They then freed all of the captives, but one. One of the captors had a old woman that he did want to free for six camels. He thought that she was rich and worth more. His friend said, “Let her go. Her breasts are flat. She can’t conceive and her mouth is cold. It is not like she is a virgin in her prime or even a plump middle-aged matron.” He let her go for six camels.

1878 Mohammed gave three of his companions a slave girl for each to use for sex. Uthman took his sex slave and gave her to his son.

## THE RAID ON TABUK

1894 Mohammed decided to raid the Byzantines. Normally he never let his men actually know where he was headed. He would announce a destination, but after they were on the way, he would announce the actual target. This raid was far away and the weather was very hot, so greater preparations had to be made. The men began to prepare, but with no enthusiasm because of the heat. It was time for the harvest to begin, and they remembered the last combat with the Byzantines where they lost badly.

1894 When Mohammed asked one of his best men if he wanted to go, the man replied, “Would you allow me to stay? You know how much I love women and when I see the Byzantine women, I don’t know if I will be able to control myself.” So Mohammed told him to stay.

1896 So Mohammed set off, but there were many Muslims who were slow to leave or they came with misgivings. After the first camp some of the Muslims left and returned to Medina. These were called hypocrites.

1902 When they got to Tabuk, the people there paid the poll tax, jizya. By paying the poll tax, a per-person tax, they would not be attacked, killed or robbed by the Muslims. Those who paid the jizya were under the protection of Islam

1903 Mohammed sent Khalid to the fort of a Christian chief. When the chief and his brother rode out of their fort to inspect the cattle, Khalid killed the chief’s brother and captured the ruler. The chief agreed to pay the poll tax to Islam. Mohammed returned to Medina.

## ETERNAL JIHAD

M448 After all the victories, some Muslims said that the days of fighting were over and even began to sell their arms. But Mohammed forbid this,

saying, “There shall not cease from the midst of my people a party engaged in fighting for the truth, until the Antichrist appears.” Jihad was recognized as the normal state of affairs.

## ABU BAKR LEADS THE PILGRIMAGE

1919-20 Abu Bakr led the pilgrimage from Medina to Mecca. While they were in Mecca, major changes were made to the treaty of Hudaibiya, which are recorded in the Koran. The treaty was only to be good for four more months, then jihad would be declared if the Kafirs didn’t submit to Islam.

1922 After this time, those who practiced the old native religions of Arabia would no longer be able to go to Mecca for pilgrimage.

1924 Because the Kafirs are considered unclean, they could not approach the Kabah. The money lost from their pilgrimages would be taken care of by Allah. Jihad would bring in the lost money.

1933 When Mohammed had taken Mecca and Tabuk, deputations began to come from the Arabs. The Arabs were waiting to see what would happen between the Quraysh and Mohammed. When Mohammed was victorious, the Arabs came in groups and joined with him.

1956 The kings of Himyar wrote to Mohammed that they had submitted to Islam. Mohammed wrote them back, “... I received your message and am informed of your conversion to Islam and your killing Kafirs. Allah has guided you. ... send the one-fifth of the spoils of war and tax the believers... Christians and Jews who do not convert must pay the poll tax...”

1957 Mohammed sent Muadh to Yemen to proselytize. While he was there a woman asked what rights a husband has over his wife. He replied to the woman who asked, “If you went home and found your husband’s nose running with pus and blood and you sucked it until it was cleaned, you still would not have fulfilled your husband’s rights.”

1965 Mohammed sent out tax collectors to every part of Islam to collect the tax.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# MOHAMMED'S LAST YEAR

## CHAPTER 13

*24:51 But when Allah and His Messenger call the true believers to judge between them, their response is, "We have heard, and we obey."*

### THE FAREWELL PILGRIMAGE

1966 Mohammed took Aisha with him on the pilgrimage to Mecca. However, Aisha's menstrual period had started and she was unclean. So she started to cry, but Mohammed said that she could observe all of the rituals except for going around the Kabah.

1968 Ten years after entering Medina, Mohammed made what was to be his last pilgrimage to Mecca. There he made his farewell address:

1969 The men have rights over their wives and the wives have rights over the men. The wives must never commit adultery nor act in a sexual manner towards others. If they do, put them in separate rooms and beat them lightly. If they refrain from these things, they have the right to food and clothing. Lay injunctions on women lightly for they are prisoners of the men and have no control over their persons.

M473 Feed and clothe your slaves well.

### THE FINAL STATE OF CHRISTIANS AND JEWS

M453 When Mohammed first started preaching in Mecca, his religion was Arabian. Then Allah became identified with Jehovah and Jewish elements were introduced. When Mohammed moved to Medina, he argued with the Jews when they denied his status as a prophet in the Judaic line. He then annihilated the Jews.

M453 In his last statement, Jews and Christians became perpetual second class political citizens, dhimmis. Only those Christians and Jews who submit to Islam are protected. The real Christians are those who deny the Trinity and accept Mohammed as the final prophet. The real Jews are those who accept Mohammed as the final prophet of their god, Jehovah. Both Christians and Jews must accept that the Koran is the true Scripture and that the Old Testament and New Testament are corrupt and in error. All other Jews and Christians are false and Kafirs.

9:29 *Make war on those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] but do not believe in Allah or in the Last Day. They do not forbid what Allah and His Messenger have forbidden. The Christians and Jews do not follow the religion of truth until they submit and pay the poll tax [jizya], and they are humiliated.*

The Christians have hidden their prophecies that Mohammed would come to fulfill the work of Christ. To believe in the divinity of Christ is to refuse to submit to Islam. Like the Jews, only those Christians who submit to Islam, honor Mohammed as their last prophet, become dhimmis and are ruled by the Sharia (Islamic law) are actual Christians. Islam defines all religions. All religions must submit to Islam.

## SUMMARY OF MOHAMMED'S ARMED EVENTS

1973 In a nine year period Mohammed personally took part in twenty-seven raids. There were thirty-eight other battles and expeditions. This is a total of sixty-five armed events, not including assassinations and executions, for an average of one armed event every six weeks.

## MOHAMMED'S DEATH

11000 When Mohammed spoke to Aisha, his favorite wife, she complained of a headache. Mohammed said, "No, Aisha, Oh my head. Would it distress you if you were to die before me so that I might wrap you in your shroud and pray over you?" Aisha said, "I think that if you did that, that after you returned to the house you would simply spend the night with one of your other wives." But the pain became worse and he took his final illness in the house of Aisha.

11006 Mohammed weakened and was in a great deal of pain. Later he died with his head in Aisha's lap. His final words were the perfect summation of Islam, political action based upon religion.

B4,52,288 *Mohammed said, "There should be no other religions besides Islam in Arabia" and that money should continue to be paid to influence the foreign, Kafir ambassadors.*

T1831 Mohammed was buried beneath his bed. The bed was removed and a grave was dug where it had stood.



*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# MOHAMMED, THE MAN

## CHAPTER 14

*64:12 So obey Allah and His messenger. But if you turn your backs to them, Our messenger is not to blame, for his duty is only to deliver Our warning clearly.*

### HIS PHYSICAL APPEARANCE

B5,58,280 Pagans would part their hair, but Mohammed used to wear his hair falling loose like the people of the Scriptures. If not instructed differently, Mohammed would follow their example. Later, however, Mohammed began to wear his hair parted.

B7,72,787 Mohammed was neither tall nor short. His complexion was similarly muted, neither pale nor bronzed. His hair was not particularly curly or straight. He became Allah's Apostle at forty, spending ten years in Mecca and ten years at Medina. He died at the age of sixty.

B7,72,791 Qatada asked Anas to describe Mohammed's hair. Anas said, "Mohammed's hair reached almost to his shoulders. It was wavy. Not straight, but not very curly, either.

B7,72,793 Mohammed had a unique look to him. He had big feet and hands, but his palms were soft.

B4,56,751 Mohammed was of average height and had wide shoulders and long hair. I saw him wearing a red cloak one time, and I thought he was the most handsome man I had ever seen.

### MOHAMMED'S WHITENESS

*There are many hadiths that report Mohammed's whiteness.*

B4,56,765 When Mohammed prostrated himself to pray, he would spread his arms so wide apart, that we could see his armpits. Ibn Bukair described it as "the whiteness of his armpits."

B9,90,342 At the battle of Al-Ahzab, Mohammed helped us carry dirt to the fortifications. We could see the dust covering his white belly.

B1,3,63 We were sitting with Mohammed in the Mosque one day when a man rode up on a camel. He asked, "Which one of you is Mohammed?" We answered, "That white man leaning on his arm..."

B1,8,367 Just before the battle of Khaybar, we and Mohammed gave the Fajr prayer before sunup. I [Anas] was riding behind Abu Talha and next to Mohammed. We were so close, that as we rode down the main street of Khaybar, my knee touched Mohammed's leg. His garment moved and exposed the whiteness of his thigh.

B4,56,747 Rabia Bin Abi Abdur-Rahman heard Anas Bin Malik describe Mohammed like this: "For our people, he was average height. Not tall, but not short. He had an middling complexion, rosy, not pale white, but not dark brown either. His hair was wavy: not very curly, but not very straight. Allah first spoke to him when he was forty. He received Allah's revelations for ten years while in Mecca. He then stayed in Medina for another ten years. When he died, he had maybe twenty gray hairs on his head and in his beard." Rabia said, "One time I saw some of his hair and it was red. I was told that perfume had turned it red."

## HIS ANGER

*There are many hadiths about Mohammed's anger.*

B1,2,19 If Mohammed ordered a Muslim to do something, he made sure that it was something that was easily done, something within their limits of strength or endurance. Still, many complained, "Mohammed, we can't do that. We are not like you. Allah has freed you from all sin." The anger was apparent on Mohammed's face and he said, "No one fears Allah more than I, and I know Allah better than any of you."

B1,3,90 A man once said to Mohammed, "I may not be able to go to the obligatory prayer because our Imam is very long-winded when he leads the ceremony." The narrator continued, "I had never seen Mohammed more angry. He said, 'Some of you are making the others dislike praying. If you lead the prayers, then you should keep it brief. Some of the people are sick, weak, or simply have work to do.'"

## HIS CURSES

B9,85,73 Mohammed would beseech Allah in this prayer, "Allah, Save the weak Muslims. Be cruel to the Mudar and smite them with years of famine and hunger just as you brought famine to the people during the time of Joseph."

## HIS WIFE AISHA

*Aisha was his favorite wife. This dream occurred when she was six.*

M031,5977 Aisha quotes Mohammed: “Three nights in a row I saw you in a dream. An angel delivered you wrapped in silks and said, ‘This is your wife.’ As I unwrapped the silk, your face appeared. I said, ‘If this dream is indeed from Allah, then let Him make it happen.’”

M008,3309 Mohammed and I [Aisha] were married when I was six. I was brought to his house when I was nine. We moved to Medina where I fell sick with a fever for a month. My hair fell out as a result of the illness. My mother, Umm Ruman, came for me one day as I was playing on a swing with some friends. I had no idea what she wanted, but she took me by the hand and had me stand by the door of our house. I was out of breath, but when I had composed myself, my mother took me inside and handed me over to some of the Helper women who proceeded to wish me good luck. The women washed me and made me pretty. Mohammed came in the morning and I was given to him.

B8,73,151 My girl friends and I [Aisha] would play with dolls while in Mohammed’s presence. They would try to hide when he entered, but he always would call them back to play with me. Playing with dolls or anything with a human image was forbidden, but because I was so young, not yet having reached puberty, it was allowed.

## HIS OTHER WIVES

B3,47,755 The wives of Mohammed collected themselves in two groups. The first group consisted of Aisha, Haifsa, Safiya, and Sauda. The other group was made up of Um Salama and his other wives. The Muslims all knew that Mohammed loved Aisha, so if someone had a gift to give Mohammed, they would wait until he was staying at her home.

This made the wives in Um Salama’s group jealous and they sent Um Salama to the prophet to request that he tell the people to send their gifts to him in whoever’s house he happened to be in. Um Salama made the request to Mohammed several times, each time getting no reply. Finally, he answered her by saying, “Do not try to hurt me on Aisha’s account. Allah’s revelations do not come to me when I am not in her bed.” Um Salama said to him, “I apologize to Allah for causing you pain.”

The wives remained unhappy, so they sent Mohammed’s daughter, Fatima, to him. Fatima said to Mohammed, “Your wives ask that you treat

them as well as you do Abu Bakr's daughter, Aisha." Mohammed said to her, "Do you love what I love?" She said that she did, and when the jealous wives asked her to intercede with her father again, she refused.

Finally, they sent Zainab to him. Zainab was bitter and spoke harshly as she asked that Aisha be shown no favoritism. Zainab began to shout and scold and abuse Aisha to her face. Aisha then vigorously answered Zainab's complaints until she was left silent. Mohammed looked at Aisha and said, "She is certainly Abu Bakr's daughter."

## SEX

B1,5,249 Narrated by Maimuna, a wife of Mohammed: After sex, Mohammed purified himself just as he would for prayer except that he would not wash his feet. He would rinse off the semen and vaginal secretions from his penis and then pour water over the rest of his body. He would then remove his feet from the bathtub and wash them. That was how Mohammed cleaned himself after sex.

B1,6,298 Mohammed and I [Aisha] would bathe together after sex in the same tub. During my period, he would have me wear a dress that only covered me from the waist down and he would fondle me. He would also let me wash his head while I was menstruating.

## HABITS

B1,4,169 Mohammed would perform all tasks by working from right to left. This included putting on his shoes, combing his hair, or washing himself.

B4,54,428 Aisha said that Mohammed would become very agitated if he saw a cloud in the sky. He would pace back and forth, continually enter and exit his house and his face would change color. If it rained, however, he would become relaxed. Aisha always recognized that mood of his. When she asked about it he said, "I don't know why I'm afraid. It might be the same agitation that the people of Ad referred to in the Koran:

46:24 Then they saw a cloud coming into their valley. They said, "The cloud is bringing us rain." No, it is the scourge you sought, a wind that carries agonizing retribution. Everything was destroyed by the command of the Lord. Morning rose on empty houses—the reward of the guilty.

B7,65,292 Mohammed preferred to begin things from the right side; combing his hair, putting on his shoes, or performing ablution. He would follow this practice in every thing he did.

M023,5018 Anas said that Mohammed forbade people to drink while standing. Qatada related: We asked him, “What about eating while standing?” Anas said, “That is even more objectionable.”

M023,5029 Anas related the story that Mohammed would drink his refreshments in three gulps.

M023,5037 Mohammed: “When a Muslim eats, they should not wipe their hand until it is licked clean, either by themselves or by someone else.”

M024,5231 Mohammed: “When someone puts on sandals, he should put the right one on first. When someone takes off sandals, he should take off the left one first. Either this or simply put them on or take them off at the same time.”

M024,5234 Mohammed made it illegal for a man to eat with his left hand or walk with only one sandal on. He also forbade a man to wear a garment that had no opening for the arms to extend or support himself when wearing a single garment that might expose his genitalia.

M024,5238 Mohammed: “No one should lie on his back with one foot placed on top of the other.”

## MODESTY

B7,72,807 One day a man peeped into Mohammed’s house and saw him scratching his head with a comb. Noticing the man Mohammed said, “If I had realized that you were peeking at me I would have stuck this comb in your eye. The reason that people must ask permission is to keep them from seeing things that they shouldn’t.”

## MOHAMMED’S SLAVES

*The woman that Mohammed’s “right hand possessed” was a captive used as a slave for his pleasure in sex.*

B9,89,321 Mohammed would only take a pledge of allegiance from a woman if she first recited this Koranic verse:

60:12 O, Messenger, when believing women come to you and pledge an oath of allegiance to you and ascribe no other gods as partners to

Allah ...

Mohammed would never allow his hand to touch a woman's hand unless she was a woman that his right hand possessed, that is his slave or one of his wives slaves.

B3,34,351 A man committed himself to freeing one of his slaves upon his death, but later needed money. Mohammed took the slave and asked, "Does anyone want to buy this slave from me?" Nu Aim received the slave from Mohammed after giving the Prophet a certain price.

B3,46,717 I, Ibn Aun, wrote Nafi a letter, and his reply said that the forces of Mohammed had initiated a surprise attack on the Bani Mustaliq when they were watering their cattle and not paying attention. Their men were slain and their women and children were seized. A woman, Juwairiya, was given to Mohammed as spoils of war that day. Nafi's letter said that he had heard the account from Ibn Umar, who was in the attacking army that day.

B3,47,765 Narrated by Kurib, a freed slave of Ibn Abbas: "Maimuna, one of the Prophet's wives, told me one day that she had freed one of her slave girls without first asking Mohammed's permission. When it was her turn to stay with Mohammed, she said, 'Are you aware that I have freed my slave girl?' He replied, 'Really?' 'Yes,' she said. Mohammed said, 'Your reward would have been greater if you had given her to one of your mother's brothers.'"

B7,65,344 While at the house of his slave tailor, Mohammed ate a gourd dish that he seemed to enjoy. Ever since then, I [Anas] have enjoyed eating gourd.

B9,91,368 Umar sought Mohammed and found him in an upstairs room with a black slave standing guard at the top of the stairs. Umar said to the slave, "Inform Mohammed that Umar is here and seeks permission to see him." The slave then admitted me to the room.

## WAR

*Mohammed was devoted to violence in the cause of Islam.*

B9,90,332 Abu Huraira overheard Mohammed say, "By Allah, if I had a way of transporting all the men who wished to fight in jihad, I would not miss any opportunity to fight the Kafir. It would be a pleasure to be martyred for Allah, be resurrected, and martyred again and again."

B4,52,151 Mohammed and Abu Talha would share a shield in battle. Abu Talha was an exceptional archer, and Mohammed would follow the flight of his arrows as they sped toward their target.

### *Humor in j̣ihad.*

M031,5932 Amir B. Sa'd reported, on the authority of his father, that Allah's Apostle gathered his parents for him on the Day of Uhud when a polytheist had set fire to (i.e. attacked fiercely) the Muslims. Thereupon Allah's Apostle said to him: "(Sa'd), shoot an arrow, (Sa'd), may my mother and father be taken as ransom for you." I drew an arrow and I shot a featherless arrow at the Meccan polytheist, aiming his side. He fell down and his private parts were exposed. Allah's Messenger laughed so that I saw his front teeth.

### CRUELTY

B2,24,577 Some people came to Medina, but the climate made them sick, so Mohammed gave them permission to stay among the camels that had been collected for taxes. He told them to drink the camel's urine and milk, as that would cure their illness. However, the people instead murdered the shepherd and stole the camels. Mohammed sent men after them and they were quickly captured. Mohammed ordered that their hands and feet be cut off, and their eyes pierced with hot pokers. They were left to die of thirst on the rocks of Harra.

### HIS BODILY FUNCTIONS

#### *One of many hadiths about Mohammed and elimination.*

B1,9,479 Whenever Mohammed went to the toilet, another boy and I would follow with a stick, a staff and a container of water. When he finished, we would give him the water.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*



# THE TEARS OF JIHAD

## CHAPTER 15

These figures are a rough estimate of the death of Kafirs by the political act of jihad.

### AFRICA

Thomas Sowell estimates that 11 million slaves were shipped across the Atlantic and 14 million were sent to the Islamic nations of North Africa and the Middle East<sup>[1]</sup>. For every slave captured many others died. Estimates of this collateral damage vary. The renowned missionary David Livingstone estimated that for every slave who reached the plantation five others died by being killed in the raid or died on the forced march from illness and privation<sup>[2]</sup>. Those who were left behind were the very young, the weak, the sick and the old. These soon died since the main providers had been killed or enslaved. So, for 25 million slaves delivered to the market, we have the death of about 120 million people. Islam ran the wholesale slave trade in Africa.

<sup>[1]</sup>. Thomas Sowell, *Race and Culture*, BasicBooks, 1994, p. 188.

<sup>[2]</sup>. Woman's Presbyterian Board of Missions, *David Livingstone*, p. 62, 1888.

*120 million Africans*

### CHRISTIANS

The number of Christians martyred by Islam is 9 million<sup>[1]</sup>. A rough estimate by Raphael Moore in History of Asia Minor is that another 50 million died in wars by jihad. So to account for the 1 million African Christians killed in the 20th century we have:

<sup>[1]</sup>. David B. Barrett, Todd M. Johnson, *World Christian Trends AD 30-AD 2200*, William Carey Library, 2001, p. 230, table 4-10.

*60 million Christians*

### HINDUS

Koenard Elst in *Negationism in India*<sup>[1]</sup> gives an estimate of 80 million Hindus killed in the total jihad against India. The country of India today is

only half the size of ancient India, due to jihad. The mountains near India are called the Hindu Kush, meaning the “funeral pyre of the Hindus”.

[1]. Koenard Elst, *Negationism in India*, Voice of India, New Delhi, 2002, pg. 34.

*80 million Hindus*

## BUDDHISTS

Buddhists do not keep up with the history of war. Keep in mind that in jihad only Christians and Jews were allowed to survive as dhimmis (servants to Islam); everyone else had to convert or die. Jihad annihilated the Buddhists in Turkey, Afghanistan, along the Silk Route, and in India. The total is roughly 10 million<sup>[1]</sup>.

[1]. David B. Barrett, Todd M. Johnson, *World Christian Trends AD 30-AD 2200*, William Carey Library, 2001, p. 230, table 4-1.

*10 million Buddhists*

## JEWS

Oddly enough there were not enough Jews killed in jihad to significantly affect the totals of the Great Annihilation. The jihad in Arabia was 100% but the numbers were in the thousands, not millions. After that the Jews submitted and became the dhimmis (servants and second class citizens) of Islam and did not have geographic political power.

## TOTAL

This gives a rough estimate of 270 million killed by jihad.

# COMMENTS

## CHAPTER 16

*3:53 Our Lord! We believe in what Thou hast revealed, and we follow the Apostle; then write us down among those who bear witness.*

### SUBMISSION AND DUALITY

After Mohammed declared himself to be the messenger of Allah, he advanced the idea that everyone had to submit to his message. His entire world became dualistic, divided into those who believed him and those who did not—believers and Kafirs.

### DUAL ETHICS

Islam's success, measured by membership, came when Mohammed entered the political realm after he moved to Medina. His politics were based upon a dualistic ethical system with one set of ethics for Muslims and another set of ethics for Kafirs. An example of this duality is that a Muslim should not lie to another Muslim, but on several occasions Mohammed gave permission to lie to Kafirs to advance the cause of Allah.

This dual ethical system was necessary to implement jihad, and it remains in place today. Dual ethics create an “other” that can be treated differently from a Muslim. Dual ethics are necessary to create the prime duality of the Islamic world-view:

*dar al Islam*, land of submission

*dar al harb*, land of war

What little we know about Mohammed's early life shows that he was a friend to all and treated all people as he wanted to be treated. But when he ceased to be a businessman and became a prophet, his world-view and his ethics changed. Humanity became divided into two groups—Muslim and Kafir, and he treated these two groups differently. Mohammed's reactions to each person depended upon whether that person was a Muslim.

Mohammed's political view was profoundly and fundamentally dualistic. Unity of humanity would come only when the whole world submitted to Islam.

A person following in the footsteps of Mohammed believes only Muslims are protected by Islam. A Kafir does not have to be granted the usual considerations of morality such as equality, brotherhood, honesty, and compassion. From the examples we see in Mohammed's life, Kafirs can be

mocked, cursed, maligned, threatened, tortured, killed, robbed, assassinated, or enslaved to advance the cause of Islam.

Good and evil are defined in the Trilogy. If an action against a Kafir advances Islam, then the action is good. Anything that resists Islam is evil.

## JIHAD

Duality of ethics was the basis for Mohammed's greatest single innovation—jihad. Jihad is dual ethics with sacred violence. The key religious element of the dual ethics is that Allah sanctifies violence for complete domination. The Kafirs must submit to Islam.

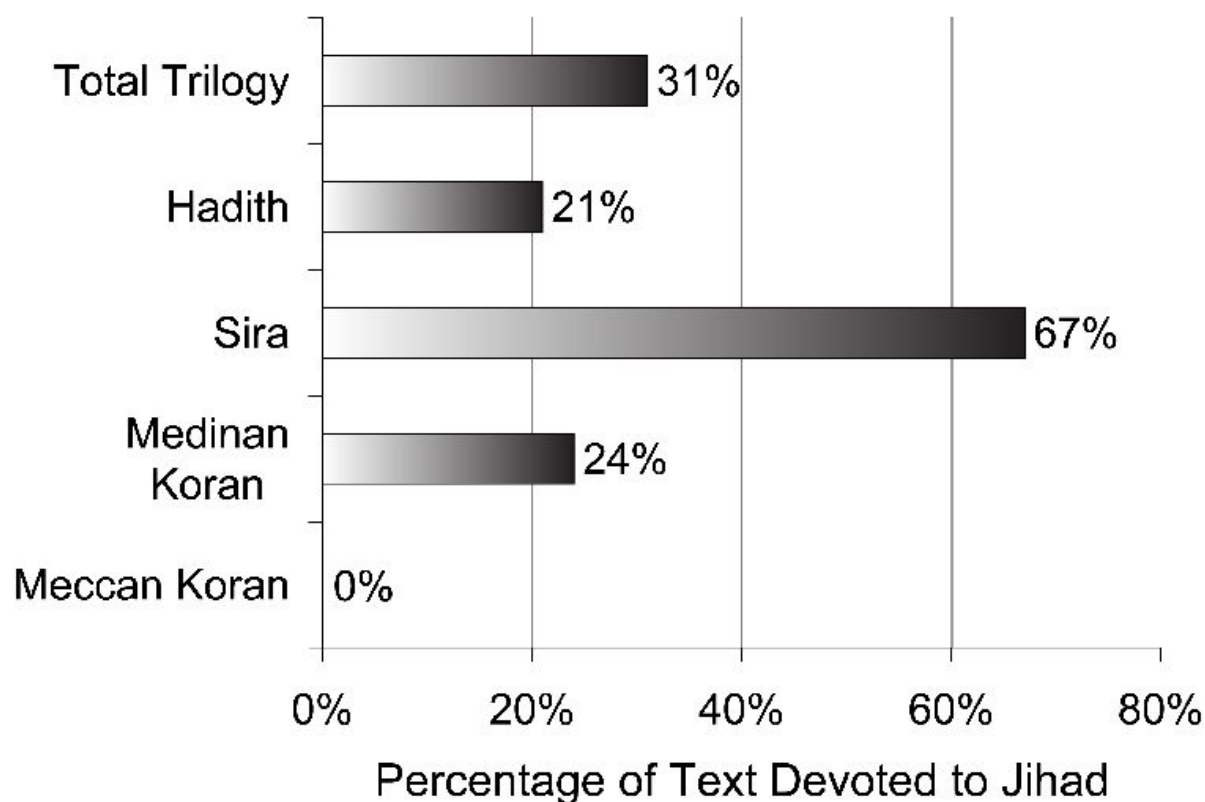
Jihad is usually called “holy war” but this is far too narrow a view. Jihad means struggle or effort and is a process that is epitomized by the life of Mohammed, the perfect jihadist. In Mecca, Mohammed demonstrated the initial practice of jihad when Islam was weak: persuasion and conversion. When he moved to Medina, he demonstrated how jihad worked when Islam was strong: using immigration against inhabitants, creating political power by struggling against the host, dominating other religions, using violence, and establishing a government.

All of the Trilogy deals with jihad<sup>[1]</sup>.

[1]

[http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Percentage\\_of\\_Triology\\_Text\\_Devoted\\_to\\_Jihad.html](http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Percentage_of_Triology_Text_Devoted_to_Jihad.html)

## Amount of Trilogy Text Devoted to Jihad



### THE JIHAD OF MECCA

From the standpoint of war, jihad did not begin until Mohammed's first killing attack in Medina. But its roots go back to Mecca when Mohammed cursed the ancient native Arabic gods. Jihad is a force that still manifests itself according to circumstances. The violence may go no further than aggressive arguments, beatings, put-downs, hostility, insults, or threats, but it is always based upon an ethical system of duality that started in Mecca.

In Mecca, Mohammed promised his critics' slaughter. When heated arguments broke out between the Meccans and Muslims, it was a Muslim who picked up a weapon and drew blood. It was a Muslim, Umar, who violently protested over a poem. Mohammed was in Mecca when he signed a blood oath with the Muslims of Medina.

The root of the violence of Medina was the peace of Mecca. A peace that demanded submission.

### THE SUCCESS OF POLITICAL ISLAM AND JIHAD

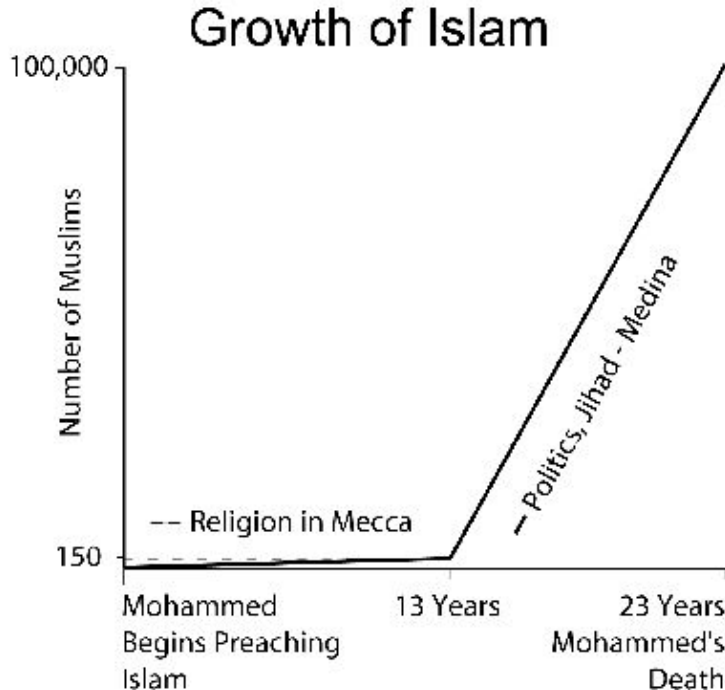
It is possible to take the data found in the Sira and give a scientific basis for the success of Islam.

Religious Islam is defined as doctrine concerned with going to Paradise and avoiding Hell by following the Koran and the Sunna. The part of Islam that deals with the “outsider”, the Kafir, is defined as political Islam. Since so much of the Trilogy is about the Kafir, the statistical conclusion is that Islam is primarily a political system, not a religious system.

Mohammed’s success depended on politics, not religion. The Sira, Mohammed’s biography, gives a highly detailed accounting of his rise to power. He preached the religion of Islam for 13 years in Mecca and garnered 150 followers. He was forced to move to Medina and became a politician and warrior. During the last 9 years of his life, he was involved in an event of violence on the average of every 6 weeks. When he died, every Arab was a Muslim. Mohammed succeeded through politics, not religion.

An estimate can be made that there were 100,000 Muslims<sup>[1]</sup> when Mohammed died. Using this information allows a graph to be drawn:

[1] *The History of al-Tabari*, volume XI, SUNY, Albany, NY, page 9. Khalid, the sword of Allah, went into battle in 633 AD (Mohammed died in 632 AD), with 10,000 Muslim Arab troops at the Battle of Chains. A nation at full conflict can field an army of about 10% of its population. If 10% is 10,000, then the total population is 100,000.



There are two distinct growth processes—religion and politics. Teaching and religion grew at a rate of about 12 new Muslims per year. Politics and jihad grew at a rate of 10,000 new Muslims per year, an enormous increase. This is a

process yield improvement of over 800%. Politics was almost a thousand times more effective than religion.

There would be no Islam today, if it were only a religion. Statistics show that Islamic politics is what brought Islam success, not religion. To say that Islam is the religion of peace misses the point, since the religion is not the core of Islam's power. It is its politics that count, not its religion.

The statistical conclusion: Islam is primarily a political ideology.

## THE SUPREME MASTER OF COMPLETE WAR

Mohammed was the supreme master of complete war and has had no equal to this day. His understanding of the use of force was sophisticated and subtle. Physical violence was only a small part of his understanding of war. That is why comparisons make him superior to military men such as Julius Caesar. Other military geniuses established empires, but none of them had a process for war and empire that lasted for fourteen-hundred years and is still going strong.

Mohammed's profound insight was not simply the waging of physical war but of waging war of the mind, emotions, culture, politics, and religion. There is no aspect of being human that Mohammed did not use for war. Money, salvation, sex, culture, religion, destiny, family, immigration, legal codes, government, power, deceit, racial pride, tribalism, community, fear, propaganda, diplomacy, spy-craft, philosophy, ethics, and psychology were all used for jihad. Jihad was not holy war but complete and total civilizational war.

## ISLAMIZATION OF A CULTURE

The Sira gives a dynamic picture of how Islam enters a culture. When Mohammed started preaching in Mecca, there was no animosity. Islam was portrayed as a logical continuation of the native Arabic religions. Then Islam claimed to be a "brother religion" to Judaism. Next it became not just a better religion but the best, and all of the other religions were wrong. Islam was publicly confrontational, attacking every aspect of the host culture. Hostility developed between Islam and the Meccan culture of religious tolerance. The Meccans tried to placate the Muslims, but there could be no compromise. Islam turned increasingly to violence that culminated in a treaty of war with new allies in Medina.

When the Muslims immigrated to Medina, the Immigrants were peaceful. But when the Jews said that Mohammed was not a prophet in the Jewish tradition, Islam became hostile. Islam was the better religion; and if debate did not show that, then forceful arguments would. Up to this point, the process of Islam in Medina was the same as in Mecca.

The Immigrants were very poor and there was little growth of the religion. In Medina Mohammed found a way to obtain money and settle old scores with the Meccans who had never submitted to Islam. The solution was political—jihad against the Meccans, the Jews, and their neighbors. By jihad, political Islam conquered all of Arabia in nine years.

## MOHAMMED AND THE JEWS

The relationship between Mohammed and the Jews takes up a very large part of the Sira. In Mecca, Mohammed's relationship with them was religious. Mohammed identified Allah with Jehovah. (Mohammed never explained who Allah was. He did not have to. Allah, the moon god, was chief of the many gods in the Kabah. The Quraysh tribe swore all oaths by Allah long before Mohammed did.) The Koran adopted the Jewish stories about Moses, Adam, and others to make the point that Allah would punish those who didn't obey His prophets.

He took this stance when he was in Mecca where there were very few Jews. In contrast, Medina was about half Jewish. Their leaders were weak debaters but, even so, they let Mohammed know he was not a Jewish prophet. The tone of Mohammed and the Koran then changed regarding Jews. The theological ground was laid for their destruction.

When Mohammed attacked the first Jewish tribe, they had the choice of conversion or exile and losing their possessions. The second tribe had the same choice. But the third tribe of Medina had the choice of conversion or death. The Jews of Khaybar had the choice of conversion or dhimmitude, a permanent second-class legal status.

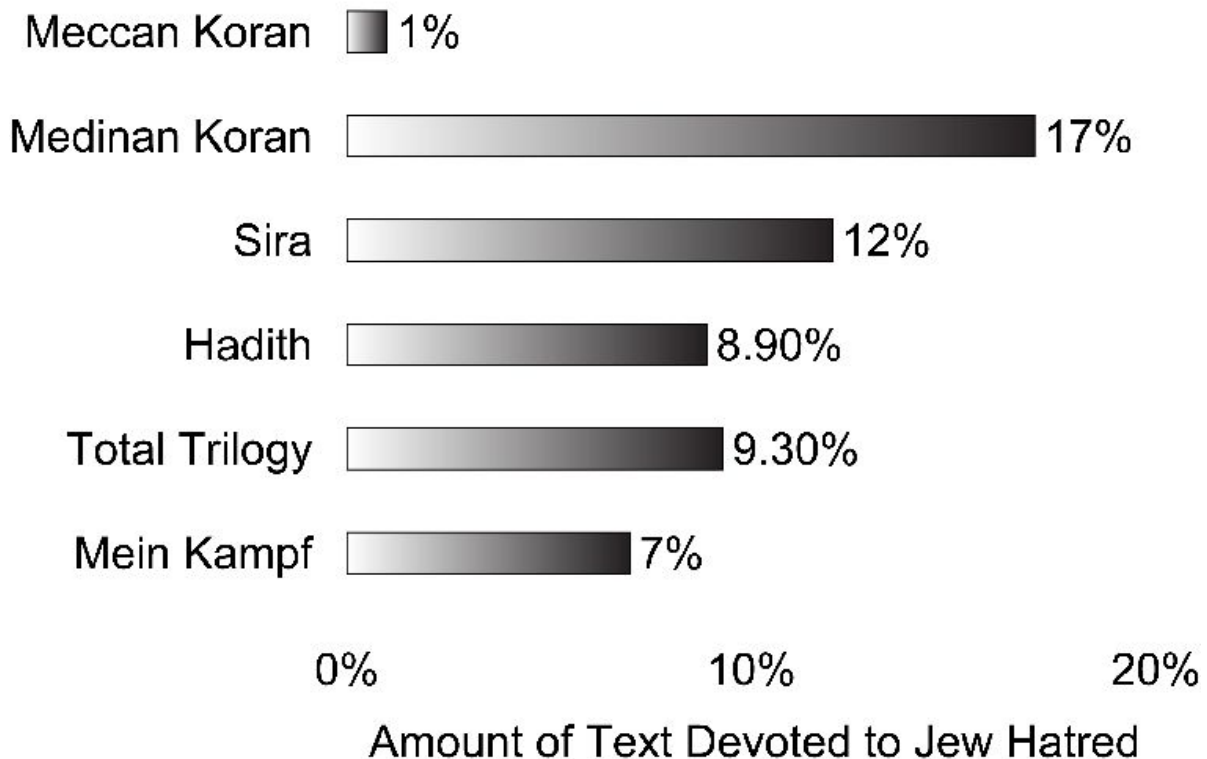
The Jewish tribes were never able to make real alliances against Islam. Each tribe stood alone in its fight against Islam and each lost.

The Trilogy<sup>[1]</sup> is even more negative about the Jews than Hitler's Mein Kampf. What marks the biggest difference between Mein Kampf and the Trilogy is that Hitler did not write a first section in Mein Kampf detailing how much he admired the Jews. There is a contradiction about how the Koran treats Jews in Mecca and how they are treated in Medina. Due to Islamic dualism, both attitudes about the Jews are true, at the same time.

<sup>[1]</sup> [http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Amt\\_anti-Jew\\_Text.html](http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Amt_anti-Jew_Text.html)



## Anti-Jew Text in Trilogy



### DHIMMIS

The relationship between Islam the Christians and Jews was formed by Mohammed. The relationship is the dhimmi status, or dhimmitude, as established at Khaybar after the Jews were crushed. A dhimmi is a Jew or Christian who agrees to be a second-class citizen politically, culturally, and religiously. The dhimmi sacrifices all civil rights and pays a special tax of humiliation. Indeed, the cash flow of the empire of Islam was based upon this special tax, the *jizya*.

### SLAVERY

Mohammed captured slaves, sold slaves, bought slaves, freed slaves, tortured slaves, had sex with slaves, gave slaves as gifts of pleasure, received slaves as gifts, and used slaves for work. The Sira is exquisitely clear on the issue of slavery.

In Islam, slavery is a blessing. Either the slave or his family will one day convert to Islam in order to be freed, thereby creating new Muslims.

### A WAR OF CIVILIZATIONS

Islam is a civilization of dualism and submission. Ours is a civilization with a unitary ethical ideal. We fall short, but our ideal can be used to judge and guide us. The Golden Rule leads us to equality and freedom. Equality and freedom have no basis in duality and submission. You can't submit and be free. There is no equality in submission.

The vision that humanity is one spirit has no compromise with the vision that all the world must submit to Islam. One or the other must triumph.

For 1400 years Islam has triumphed over the Kafir, the Christian Kafir, the Jewish Kafir, the Hindu Kafir, the Buddhist Kafir, the atheist Kafir and the African Kafir.

Today our culture stumbles in the darkness of dhimmitude. But the light of knowledge of the doctrine and history of political Islam can dispel this darkness.

Once we understand the true nature of the civilization of Islam, we can unite and overcome dualism and triumph over submission.

#### TO THE READER

Take the time to reflect on what you have read and draw your own conclusions. If you would like to know more, read *Mohammed and the Unbelievers*, CSPI Publishing.

If you would like to read the original of the Sira, Ishaq's *Sirat Rasul Allah*, get A. Guillaume's *The Life of Mohammed*.

The background of the entire cover is a photograph of a desert landscape. In the foreground, there are rolling sand dunes with distinct ripples. In the distance, two small figures are standing on a dune, looking towards the horizon. The sky is a pale, hazy yellow, suggesting a sunrise or sunset. The overall color palette is warm, dominated by shades of orange, yellow, and brown.

**BILL WARNER, PHD**

**THE**  
**HADITH**

**THE TRADITIONS OF MOHAMMED**

**CSPII**

**LEVEL 1**

A TASTE OF ISLAM SERIES

THE HADITH  
THE SUNNA OF MOHAMMED

BILL WARNER

CENTER FOR THE STUDY OF  
POLITICAL ISLAM

A TASTE OF ISLAM SERIES

# THE HADITH

THE SUNNA OF MOHAMMED

BILL WARNER

CENTER FOR THE STUDY OF  
POLITICAL ISLAM

COPYRIGHT © 2010 CSPI, LLC

ISBN13 978-1-936659-01-2

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED  
V 10.22.2010

PUBLISHED BY CSPI, LLC  
[WWW.CSPIPUBLISHING.COM](http://WWW.CSPIPUBLISHING.COM)

PRINTED IN THE USA



# OVERVIEW

## CHAPTER 1

One of the easiest ways to study Islam is to learn about Mohammed through his Traditions, called the Hadith.

### THE ISLAMIC BIBLE—THE TRILOGY

Islam is defined by the words of Allah in the Koran, and the words and actions of Mohammed, the *Sunna*.

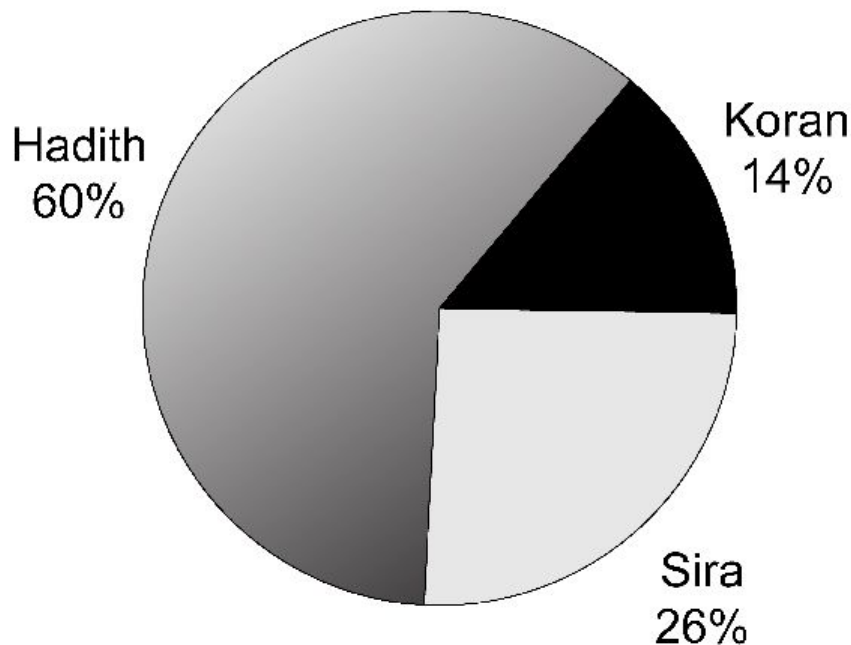
The Sunna is found in two collections of texts—the Sira (Mohammed’s life) and the Hadith. The Koran says 91 times that his words and actions are considered to be the divine pattern for humanity.

A hadith, or tradition, is a brief story about what Mohammed did or said. A collection of hadiths is called a Hadith. There are many collections of hadiths, but the most authoritative are those by Bukhari and Abu Muslim, the ones used in this book.

So the Trilogy is the Koran, the Sira and the Hadith. Most people think that the Koran is the “bible” of Islam, but it is only about 14% of the total textual doctrine. The Trilogy is the foundation and totality of Islam.



## The Relative Sizes of the Trilogy Texts



Islam is defined by the words of Allah in the Koran, and the words and actions of Mohammed, the *Sunna*.

No one text of the Trilogy can stand by itself; it is impossible to understand any one of the texts without the other supporting texts. The Koran, Sira, and Hadith are a seamless whole and speak with one voice. If it is in the Trilogy it is Islam.

### INTRODUCTION TO THE HADITH

A hadith, or tradition, usually only a paragraph long, is an action, brief story, or conversation about or by Mohammed. The action can be as elementary as Mohammed's drinking a glass of water or putting on his sandals. A collection of these stories is called the Hadith or Traditions. So the Hadith is a collection of hadiths (the actual plural of hadith is *ahadith*).

The Hadith contains the *Sunna* (the ideal speech or action) of Mohammed, that is, his pronouncements. The actual words or deeds, then, that one should follow, are the Sunna; the story that gives us the Sunna is the hadith.

There are many collectors of hadiths, but the two most authoritative collectors were Muhammad Ibn Ismail Al-Bukhari, or Bukhari, and Abu Al-

Husayn Muslim, or Muslim. Most of the hadiths in this book come from Bukhari. From 600,000 hadiths, he took the most reliable 6,720 and recorded them in *Sahih of Al-Bukhari*, also known as *Sahih Bukhari*. Muslim's work is called *Sahih Muslim*.

Bukhari's Hadith has 6800 hadiths. It is vast, but the large number of hadiths is an illusion. If you were to go through the collection and combine all of the hadiths that describe the same scene, there are probably fewer than a thousand hadiths that are unique.

## WHAT IS THIS BOOK?

Selections have been made from thirteen thousand hadiths from Bukhari and Muslim and have been sorted into categories. Most of these hadiths concern Political Islam, in other words, how Islam treats non-Muslims.

These hadiths are sacred literature. The Koran repeatedly tells all Muslims to copy the divine pattern of Mohammed's actions and words. For Islam, Mohammed is the model political leader, husband, warrior, philosopher, religious leader, and neighbor. Mohammed is the ideal pattern of man for all times and all places.

## KAFIR

The word Kafir will be used in this book instead of "unbeliever", the standard word. Unbeliever is a neutral term. The Koran defines the Kafir and Kafir is not a neutral word. A Kafir is not merely someone who does not agree with Islam, but a Kafir is evil, disgusting, the lowest form of life. Kafirs can be tortured, killed, lied to and cheated. So the usual word "unbeliever" does not reflect the political reality of Islam.

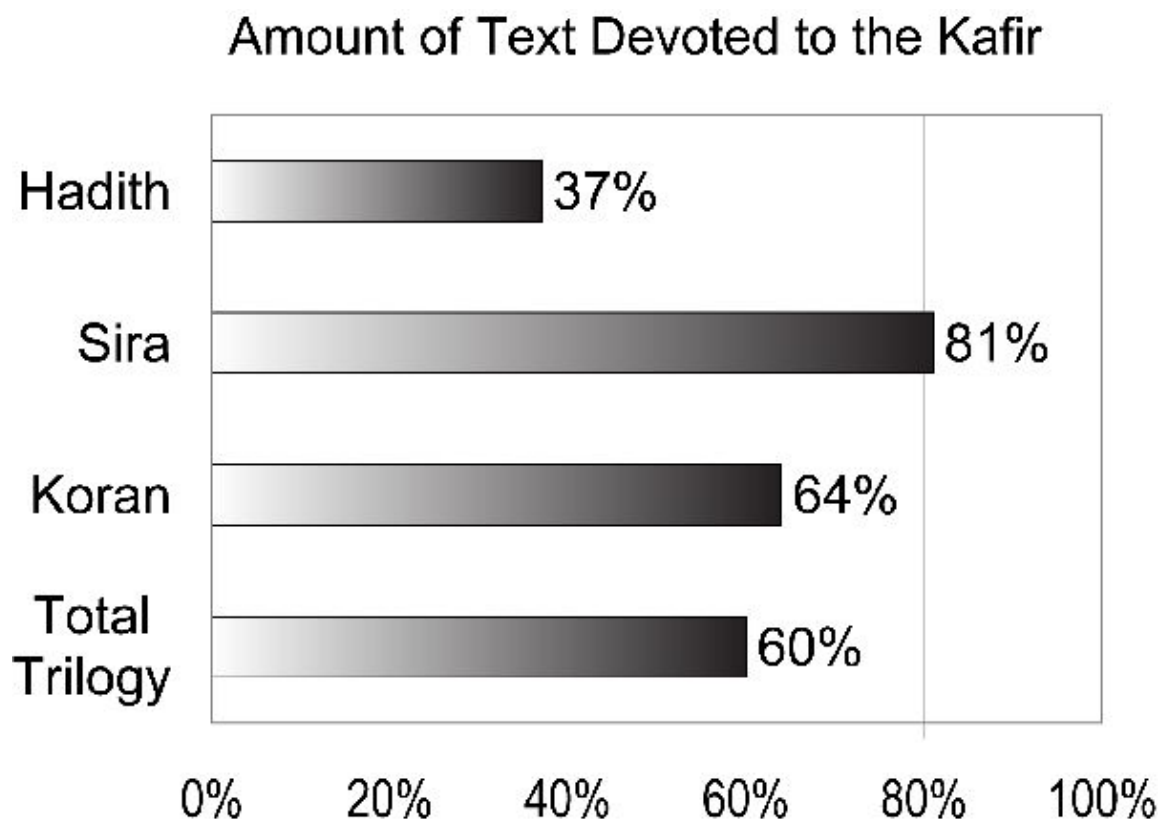
The Koran says that the Kafir may be deceived, plotted against, hated, enslaved, mocked, tortured and worse. The word is usually translated as "unbeliever" but this translation is wrong. The word "unbeliever" is logically and emotionally neutral, whereas, Kafir is the most abusive, prejudiced and hateful word in any language.

There are many religious names for Kafirs: polytheists, idolaters, People of the Book (Christians and Jews), Buddhists, atheists, agnostics, and pagans. Kafir covers them all, because no matter what the religious name is, they can all be treated the same. What Mohammed said and did to polytheists can be done to any other category of Kafir.

Islam devotes a great amount of energy to the Kafir. The majority (64%) of the Koran is devoted to the Kafir, and nearly all of the Sira (81%) deals with

Mohammed's struggle with them. The Hadith (Traditions) devotes 32% of the text to Kafirs<sup>[1]</sup>. Overall, the Trilogy devotes 60% of its content to the Kafir.

<sup>[1]</sup> <http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/AmtTxtDevotedKafir.html>



Here are a few of the Koran references:

A Kafir can be beheaded—

*47:4 When you encounter the Kafirs on the battlefield, cut off their heads until you have thoroughly defeated them and then take the prisoners and tie them up firmly.*

A Kafir can be plotted against—

*86:15 They plot and scheme against you [Mohammed], and I plot and scheme against them. Therefore, deal calmly with the Kafirs and leave them alone for a while.*

A Kafir can be terrorized—

*8:12 Then your Lord spoke to His angels and said, "I will be with you. Give strength to the believers. I will send terror into the Kafirs' hearts, cut off their heads and even the tips of their fingers!"*

A Muslim is not the friend of a Kafir—

*3:28 Believers should not take Kafirs as friends in preference to other believers. Those who do this will have none of Allah's protection and will only have themselves as guards. Allah warns you to fear Him for all will return to Him.*

A Kafir is cursed—

*33:60 They [Kafirs] will be cursed, and wherever they are found, they will be seized and murdered. It was Allah's same practice with those who came before them, and you will find no change in Allah's ways.*

## KAFIRS AND PEOPLE OF THE BOOK

Muslims tell Christians and Jews that they are special. They are “People of the Book” and are brothers in the Abrahamic faith. But in Islam you are a Christian, if and only if, you believe that Christ was a man who was a prophet of Allah; there is no Trinity; Jesus was not crucified nor resurrected and that He will return to establish Sharia law. To be a true Jew you must believe that Mohammed is the last in the line of Jewish prophets.

This verse is positive:

*5:77 Say: Oh, People of the Book, do not step out of the bounds of truth in your religion, and do not follow the desires of those who have gone wrong and led many astray. They have themselves gone astray from the even way.*

Islamic doctrine is dualistic, so there is an opposite view as well. Here is the last verse written about the People of the Book (A later verse abrogates or replaces an earlier verse. See page 26.). This is the final word. It calls for Muslims to make war on the People of the Book who do not believe in the religion of truth, Islam.

*9:29 Make war on those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] but do not believe in Allah or in the Last Day. They do not forbid what Allah and His Messenger have forbidden. The Christians and Jews do not follow the religion of truth until they submit and pay the poll tax [jizya] and they are humiliated.*

The sentence “They do not forbid...” means that they do not accept Sharia law; “until they submit” means to submit to Sharia law. Christians and Jews who do not accept Mohammed as the final prophet are Kafirs.

In Islam, Christians and Jews are infidels and “People of the Book”; Hindus are polytheists and pagans. The terms infidel, People of the Book, pagan and polytheist are religious words. Only the word “Kafir” shows the common

political treatment of the Christian, Jew, Hindu, Buddhist, animist, atheist and humanist. What is done to a pagan can be done to a Jew or any other Kafir.

It is simple. If you don't believe that Mohammed is the prophet of Allah, then you are a Kafir.

The word Kafir will be used in this book instead of "unbeliever", "non-Muslim" or "disbeliever". Unbeliever or non-Muslim are neutral terms, but Kafir is not a neutral word. Instead, it is extremely bigoted and biased.

## THE THREE VIEWS OF ISLAM

There are three points of view in dealing with Islam. The point of view depends upon how you feel about Mohammed. If you believe Mohammed is the prophet of Allah, then you are a believer. If you don't, you are a *Kafir*. The third viewpoint is that of a *dhimmi*, a Kafir who is an apologist for Islam.

Dhimmis do not believe that Mohammed was a prophet, but they never say anything that would displease a Muslim. Dhimmis never offend Islam and condemn any analysis that is critical of Islam as being biased.

Let us give an example of the three points of view.

In Medina, Mohammed sat all day long beside his 12-year-old wife while they watched as the heads of 800 Jews were removed by sword.<sup>[1]</sup> Their heads were cut off because they had said that Mohammed was not the prophet of Allah. Muslims view these deaths as necessary because denying Mohammed's prophet-hood was an offense against Islam and beheading is the accepted method of punishment, sanctioned by Allah.

<sup>[1]</sup> *The Life of Muhammad*, A. Guillaume, Oxford University Press, 1982, pg. 464.

Kafirs look at this event as proof of the jihadic violence of Islam and as an evil act. They call it ethnic cleansing.

Apologists (dhimmis) say that this was a historic event, that all cultures have violence in their past, and that no judgment should be passed. They ignore the Islamic belief that the Sunna, Mohammed's words and deeds in the past, is the perfect model for today and tomorrow and forever. They ignore the fact that this past event of the beheading of 800 Jewish men continues to be acceptable in the present and the future, thus the fate of Daniel Pearl (a reporter who was beheaded on camera).

According to the different points of view, killing the 800 Jews was either evil, a perfect godly act or only another historical event, take your pick.

This book is written from the Kafir point of view and is therefore, Kafir-centric. Everything in this book views Islam from how it affects Kafirs, non-

Muslims. This also means that the religion is of little importance. Only a Muslim cares about the religion of Islam, but all Kafirs are affected by Islam's political views.

Notice that there is no right and wrong here, merely different points of view that cannot be reconciled. There is no possible resolution between the view of the Kafir and the Muslim. The apologist tries to bring about a bridge building compromise, but it is not logically possible.

## THE REFERENCE SYSTEM

References within this work:

2:123 is a reference to the Koran, chapter 2, verse 123.

B1,3,4 is a reference to *Sahih Bukhari*, volume 1, book 3, number 4.

M012, 1234 is a reference to *Sahih Muslim*, book 12, number 1234.

This book is adapted from *The Political Traditions of Mohammed* by CSPI Publishing.

# ETHICS

## CHAPTER 2

*9:63 Do they not know that whoever opposes Allah and His Messenger will abide in the fire of Hell, where they will remain forever? This is the great shame.*

Outsiders judge a religion by its ethics. They are not concerned with what it teaches about salvation or life after death, but they care greatly what the religion tells members about outsiders. The foundation of this interaction between adherents and non-members is ethics.

## BROTHERHOOD

*The brother of a Muslim is another Muslim.*

B1,2,12 Mohammed: “True faith comes when a man’s personal desires mirror his wishes for other Muslims.”

B9,85,83 Mohammed: “A Muslim is a brother to other Muslims. He should never oppress them nor should he facilitate their oppression. Allah will satisfy the needs of those who satisfy the needs of their brothers.”

## TRUTH

*In Islam something that is not true is not always a lie.*

B3,49,857 Mohammed: “A man who brings peace to the people by making up good words or by saying nice things, though untrue, does not lie.”

*An oath by a Muslim is flexible.*

B8,78,618 Abu Bakr faithfully kept his oaths until Allah revealed to Mohammed the atonement for breaking them. Afterwards he said, “If I make a pledge and later discover a more worthy pledge, then I will take the better action and make amends for my earlier promise.”

*When deception advances Islam, the deception is not a sin.*

B5,59,369 Mohammed asked, “Who will kill Ka’b, the enemy of Allah and Mohammed?”

Bin Maslama rose and responded, “O Mohammed! Would it please you if I killed him?”

Mohammed answered, “Yes.”

Bin Maslama then said, “Give me permission to deceive him with lies so that my plot will succeed.”

Mohammed replied, “You may speak falsely to him.”

*Ali was raised by Mohammed from the age of ten and became the fourth caliph. Ali pronounced the following on lies and deception.*

B9,84,64 When I relate to you the words of Mohammed, by Allah, I would rather die than bear false witness to his teachings. However, if I should say something unrelated to the prophet, then it might very well be a lie so that I might deceive my enemy...

*Deceit in war:*

M032,6303 According to Mohammed, someone who strives to promote harmony amongst the faithful and says or conveys good things is not a liar. Ibn Shihab said that he had heard only three exceptions to the rules governing false statements: lies are permissible in war, to reconcile differences between the faithful, and to reconcile a husband and wife through the manipulation or twisting of words.

*The name for deception that advances Islam is (safeguard, concealment, piety). But a Muslim must never lie to another Muslim. A lie should never be told unless there is no other way to accomplish the task Al Tabarani, in said, "Lies are sins except when they are told for the welfare of a Muslim or for saving him from a disaster."* <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup>. Bat Ye'or, *The Dhimmi* (Cranbury, N.J.: Associated University Presses, 2003), 392.

## LAW

*The hadiths are the basis of the Sharia, Islamic law. Here is a hadith about capital crimes. Killing a Kafir is not a capital crime.*

B1,3,111 I [Abu] asked Ali, "Do you know of any sources of law that were revealed to Mohammed other than the Koran?" Ali responded, "None except for Allah's law, or the ability of reason given by Allah to a Muslim, or these written precepts I possess." I said, "What are these written rules?" Ali answered, "They concern the blood money paid by a killer to a victim's relatives, the method of ransoming a captive's release from the enemy, and the law that a Muslim must never be killed as punishment for killing a Kafir."

## TREATMENT OF FELLOW MUSLIMS

*Weapons in the mosque are acceptable. The mosque is a political center as well as a community center and a place of worship.*



B1,8,443 Mohammed: “Arrows should be held by their heads when carried through mosques or markets so that they do not harm a Muslim.”

B8,73,70 Mohammed: “Harming a Muslim is an evil act; killing a Muslim means rejecting Allah.”

## POSITION TOWARD OTHER RELIGIONS

*Mohammed's deathbed wishes were to create religious apartheid in Arabia and to use money to influence Kafirs for Islam.*

B4,52,288 [...]“On his deathbed Mohammed gave three final orders saying, ‘First, drive the Kafirs from Arabia. Second, give gifts and show respect to foreign officials as I have done.’ I forgot the third command.”

## SLAVERY

*It is forbidden to capture a Muslim and make him a slave. If a slave converts to Islam, then there is a benefit in freeing him. But there is no benefit in freeing a Kafir slave. Islamic slavery is a blessing because sooner or later the slave or the slave's descendants will convert to Islam in order to be free.*

B3,46,693 Mohammed said, “If a man frees a Muslim slave, Allah will free him from the fires of Hell in the same way that he freed the slave.” Bin Marjana said that, after he related that revelation to Ali, the man freed a slave for whom he had been offered one thousand dinars by Abdullah.

## ETHICS OF KILLING WOMEN AND CHILDREN IN JIHAD

*Here are two examples that determine the rules of j̣ihad. They contradict each other, so the resolution is that either can be used as needed.*

M019,4319 In one of Mohammed's battles, it was discovered that a woman had been killed by the Muslims; however, he did not approve of killing women and children.

M019,4321 According to Sa'b B. Jaththama, Mohammed said, “They are from them,” when told of the killing of women and children by Muslims during a raid.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# JIHAD

## CHAPTER 3

61:11 *Believe in Allah and His messenger and fight valiantly for Allah's cause [jihad] with both your wealth and your lives. It would be better for you, if you only knew it!*

The ethical system of the Hadith prepares the foundation of jihad. There is one set of ethics for the Muslim and another set of ethics for the Kafir. There are two ways to deal with Kafirs. One is to treat them as inferiors but in a kindly way. The other is jihad. About 21% of Bukhari is about jihad.

*Jihad* is a unique word. Its actual meaning is struggle or effort. Islam talks of two kinds—the lesser jihad and the greater jihad. The greater jihad is spiritual effort or internal struggle, to stop smoking, for example, or control one's greed. However, the term “lesser jihad” never occurs in any authoritative hadith. There are about 2% of the hadiths in Bukhari that hold up other things as equal to jihad. The other 98% of the jihad hadiths refer to armed violence. It was violence that gave Islam its success and that is why nearly every hadith calls the jihad the best action a Muslim can perform.

Jihad, armed struggle, is usually called “holy war,” but this term is simplistic and far too narrow. It means, in fact, fighting in the cause of Allah, and it encompasses an entire way of life.

The dual ethics established by the sacred texts of Islam—treating Muslims one way and Kafirs another—are the basis of jihad. Perhaps the clearest expression of this duality is a phrase known to all Muslims: The world is divided into—

*dar al Islam*, land of submission, and

*dar al harb*, land of war.

The land of war is the country that is free of Islam, free of Allah. The land of the Kafir must become the land of those who have submitted and are the slaves of Allah. The Trilogy repeatedly stresses that Islam should be in a state of constant pressure against Kafirs; therefore, the relation between Islam and the rest of the world is sacred war or temporary peace. This struggle is eternal, universal, and obligatory for all Muslims. The only pause in jihad comes through the need for Islam to strengthen itself. Peace is temporary. War is permanent.

Jihad is laid out in all three of the Trilogy texts.

## JIHAD IN THE HADITH

The Hadith spells out the details of jihad. Who can be killed, under what circumstances, at what times, the actual words to be said upon attack, how to handle defeat, what to do with prisoners, how to build morale, and more are drawn from the ideal words and actions of Mohammed. The Hadith is a precise tactical manual for jihad.

The hadiths call armed struggle “fighting in Allah’s Cause” or “Allah’s Cause.” Many of the hadiths focus on jihad.

## THE FUNDAMENTALS OF JIHAD

This hadith summarizes all the key elements of jihad. (Only the fourth item, the Day of Resurrection, is purely religious in nature). It tells us that the whole world must submit to Islam; Kafirs are the enemy simply by not being Muslims. To achieve this dominance Islam may use terror and violence. It may use psychological warfare, fear, theft. It may take the spoils of war from Kafirs. Violence and terror are made sacred by the Koran. Peace comes only with submission to Islam.

B1,7,331 Mohammed:

I have been given five things which were not given to any one else before me:

- 1. Allah made me victorious by awe, by His frightening my enemies for a distance of one month’s journey.*
- 2. The earth has been made for me and for my followers, a place for praying and a place to perform rituals; therefore, anyone of my followers can pray wherever the time of a prayer is due.*
- 3. The spoils of war has been made lawful for me yet it was not lawful for anyone else before me.*
- 4. I have been given the right of intercession on the Day of Resurrection.*
- 5. Every Prophet used to be sent to his nation only but I have been sent to all mankind. [Emphasis added.]*

*Political Islam is universal and eternal.*

M001,0031 Mohammed: “I have been ordered to wage war against mankind until they accept that there is no god but Allah and that they believe I am His prophet and accept all revelations spoken through me. When they do these things I will protect their lives and property unless

otherwise justified by Islamic law, in which case their fate lies in Allah's hands."

## OBLIGATION

*Jihad is one of the best actions that a Muslim can perform.*

B2,26,594 Someone asked Mohammed, "What is the greatest act a Muslim can perform?" He said, "Accept Allah as the only god and that I am His prophet." Mohammed was then asked, "What is the next best act?" He answered, "To wage holy war in the name of Allah." Mohammed was then asked, "What is the next highest good?" He replied, "To make the sacred pilgrimage."

*To be a real Muslim, one must aspire to be a jihadist.*

M020,4696 Mohammed: "The man who dies without participating in jihad, who never desired to wage holy war, dies the death of a hypocrite."

*Here we have prophetic hadiths. Jihad will be practiced into the future.*

B4,152,146 Mohammed: "A time will come when the people will wage holy war, and it will be asked, 'Is there any amongst you who has enjoyed the company of Mohammed?' They will say: 'Yes.' And then victory will be bestowed upon them. They will wage holy war again, and it will be asked: 'Is there any among you who has enjoyed the company of the companions of Mohammed?' They will say: 'Yes.' And then victory will be bestowed on them."

M020,4712 Mohammed: "You shall conquer many lands and Allah will grant you victory over your enemies in battle, but none of you should stop practicing for war."

*Fighting in jihad is demanded for all Muslims except for the frail or the crippled. To sit at home is inferior to jihad. Jihad is an obligation for all times and all places and for all Muslims.*

B6,60,118 After the following verse was revealed to Mohammed, he called for a scribe,

*"Not equal are those believers who sit at home and those who strive and fight in the Cause of Allah."*

After the scribe arrived with his writing utensils, Mohammed dictated his revelation. Ibn Um Maktum, who was present, exclaimed, "O Mohammed! But I am blind." A new revelation was then revealed that said:

4:95 *Believers who stay at home in safety, other than those who are disabled, are not equal to those who fight with their wealth and their lives for Allah's cause [jihad].*

*When the leader calls for jihad, every Muslim should take part immediately.*

B4,52,42 Mohammed: "After the conquest of Mecca, there is no need to migrate to Medina, but holy war and the willingness to participate still remain. If your ruler demands warriors, answer his call immediately."

*Jihad is the best deed. The smallest action in jihad is rewarded more than prayer and fasting.*

B4,52,44 A man said to Mohammed, "Tell me what act is rewarded as much as jihad." Mohammed replied, "I do not know of any." The prophet added, "Can a Muslim warrior, while in the field of battle, perform his prayers according to ritual or fast without stopping?" The man said, "No one can do that." Abu-Huraira then added, "The Muslim jihadi is rewarded by Allah merely for the footsteps of his mount while it is tethered and grazing."

*An ordinary jihadist is superior to a saint.*

B4,52,45 Someone asked, "Mohammed, who is the best person?" Mohammed said, "A Muslim who uses all of his strength and resources striving in Allah's cause." The person then asked, "Who is the next best person?" Mohammed replied, "A Muslim who remains secluded from the world, praying to Allah and not bothering the people with foolishness."

*A jihadist fights so that Islam will triumph, not just for wealth or fame. The jihadist is the purest and best Muslim.*

B4,52,65 A man asked Mohammed, "One man fights for wealth, one man fights to achieve fame, and another fights for pride. Who among them fights for the cause of Allah?" Mohammed said, "The man who fights so that Islam should dominate is the man who fights for Allah's cause."

*All the Kafirs who fight against jihad are doomed to burn in Hell for defending their culture and civilization.*

B4,52,72 Mohammed told us that Allah revealed to him that "any holy warrior killed will go to Paradise." Umar asked the prophet, "Is it true that Muslims killed in battle will go to Paradise and Kafirs who are killed in battle will go to Hell?" Mohammed said, "Yes."

*A Muslim should support j̥ihadists in every way. This includes financing the fighters and supporting their families.*

B4,52,96 Mohammed: “Anyone who arms a jihadist is rewarded just as a fighter would be; anyone who gives proper care to a holy warrior’s dependents is rewarded just as a fighter would be.”

*Practicing j̥ihad for even one day puts a believer in Paradise and is better than all the world.*

B4,52,142 Mohammed: “To battle Kafirs in jihad for even one day is greater than the entire earth and everything on it. A spot in Paradise smaller than your riding crop is greater than the entire earth and everything on it. A day or a night’s travel in jihad is greater than the entire world and everything on it.”

*Jihad cannot stop until all of the world has submitted to Islam. All Kafirs’ lives and wealth can and will be taken by j̥ihad. Only those who submit to Islam will be spared.*

B4,52,196 Mohammed: “I have been directed to fight the Kafir until every one of them admits, ‘There is only one god and that is Allah.’ Whoever says, ‘There is only one god and that is Allah,’ his body and possessions will be protected by me except for violations of Islamic law, in which case his fate is with Allah, to be punished or forgiven, as He sees fit.”

## INVESTMENT OF MONEY IN JIHAD

*Allah rewards those who give to j̥ihad and curses those who do not.*

B2,24,522 Mohammed: “Two angels descend from Paradise each day. One says, ‘O, Allah! Reward those who contribute to jihad,’ and the other says, ‘O, Allah! Kill those who refuse to support jihad.’”

*Allah says a Muslim should spend his money on j̥ihad.*

B6,60,41 Hudhaifa said, “The following verse was revealed to Mohammed regarding the financial support of jihad.”

*2:195 Spend your wealth generously for Allah’s cause [j̥ihad] and do not use your own hands to contribute to your destruction. Do good, for surely Allah loves those that do good.*

M020,4668 Mohammed: “A person who financially supports a fighter for jihad is morally equivalent to an actual fighter. A person who cares for a warrior’s family during his service is morally equivalent to an actual fighter.”

## GOALS

*The goal of j̥ihad is the dominance of Islam over all other political systems and religions.*

B1,3,125 A man asked Mohammed, “Mohammed, what manner of fighting can be considered done for the sake of Allah? Some fight because they are angry and some for their pride.” Mohammed looked up at the man and said, “The man who fights to make Islam dominant is the man who fights for Allah’s cause.”

## REWARDS

*A Muslim martyr is one who kills for Allah and Islam. But his killing must be pure and devoted only to Allah. If his motivation is pure, then the j̥ihadist will achieve Paradise or be able to take the wealth of the Kafir.*

B1,2,35 Mohammed said, “The man who joins j̥ihad, compelled by nothing except sincere belief in Allah and His Prophets, and survives, will be rewarded by Allah either in the afterlife or with the spoils of war. If he is killed in battle and dies a martyr, he will be admitted into Paradise. Were it not for the difficulties it would cause my followers, I would never stay behind while my soldiers head off for j̥ihad. If I could, I would love to be martyred in j̥ihad, be resurrected, and martyred again and again for Allah.”

*No matter what sins a j̥ihadist commits, he will not go to Hell.*

B2,13,30 I [Abu Abs] heard Mohammed say, “Anyone who even gets his feet dirty performing j̥ihad will be saved from Hell by Allah.”

*The pure j̥ihadist must commit his life and wealth to j̥ihad. If he can reach this highest form of devotion, then not even the pilgrimage to Mecca (the Ha jj) can surpass it.*

B2,15,86 Mohammed said, “No good act during the rest of the year is better than departing on Ha jj.” Some of his companions asked, “What about j̥ihad?” Mohammed answered, “Even j̥ihad is inferior unless a man knowingly risks and loses both life and property for the sake of Allah.”

M020,4649 Mohammed: “Except debt, all sins of a martyr are forgiven.”

*Paradise lies in the shade of swords.*

M020,4681 Mohammed said, “Certainly, the gates of Paradise lie in the shade of swords.” A shabby man rose and asked Abu Musa if he had heard Mohammed say this. “Yes,” he replied. The shabby man then rejoined his

friends and said his good-byes. He then unsheathed his sword, broke and discarded its scabbard, advanced upon the enemy, and fought until he was killed.

M020,4694 Mohammed: “A man who sincerely pursues martyrdom, even if he is not killed, shall still receive its reward.”

*A jihadist can benefit Islam and achieve personal gain.*

B3,34,313 We departed with Mohammed in the year of the battle of Hunain. Mohammed gave me a captured suit of armor which I sold. I [Abu Qatada] took the money from the armor and bought a garden near the Bani Salama tribe. That was the first property I received after converting to Islam.

*Mohammed often used money to influence others about Islam.*

B4,53,374 Mohammed: “I give money to the Quraysh to tempt them into remaining true to Islam, because they are new to the faith and their lives of ignorance are a short distance away.”

*To die in jihad is the best life.*

B5,59,377 During the battle of Uhud, a man asked Mohammed, “Where will I go if I am killed in battle?” Mohammed said, “Paradise.” The man then threw away the meal that he was carrying, joined the battle, and fought until he was killed.

*Jihad had to be waged far from Arabia and that meant fast transportation, so Mohammed used the rewards of jihad to build up his cavalry. He was a military genius who planned far ahead.*

B5,59,537 The day Khaybar fell, Mohammed distributed the spoils by giving one share to the fighter and two shares to the owner of a horse. Nafi', a sub-narrator, elaborated, saying, “If a warrior supplied his own horse he received three shares; if he did not have a horse, he received only one.”

*No matter how little a Muslim does, if he dies in jihad, he will be given the highest rewards. Good works and morality pale in comparison to the rewards of jihad.*

B4,52,63 A man, his face shielded by his helmet, asked Mohammed, “Should I join the battle or accept Islam first?” Mohammed answered, “Accept Allah and then join the fight.” The man accepted Islam and was killed shortly after. Mohammed said, “A small effort but a great prize. Even



though he did not do much after accepting Islam, he shall be richly rewarded.”

*Enslavement of the Kafirs and theft of their property were made sacred for Mohammed. Since Mohammed is the ideal pattern of behavior for all Muslims at all times and all places, the wealth of Kafirs is meant to be taken by others in Islam.*

B4,53,351 Mohammed: “Allah has made it legal for me to take spoils of war.”

*Allah has a contractual agreement with all jihadists. If they die in j̥ihad, Allah will reward them above all people. If they don't die, then they can profit by theft. So the jihadist has guarantees of profit in both this world and the next.*

B4,53,352 Mohammed: “Allah promises the jihadi with pure intent either a place in Paradise or a return to his home with spoils of war and the guarantee of Allah's reward in the afterlife.”

## SEX

*Forced sex with the female captives of j̥ihad was standard practice for Mohammed and his companions. These captives became slaves used for sex, and Mohammed had his choice of the most attractive new slaves. This is the ideal pattern of Islam.*

B3,34,431 One of the captives was a beautiful Jewess, Safiya. Dihya had her first, but she was given to Mohammed next.

*Mohammed accepted the forced sex with Kafirs.*

B3,34,432 While sitting with Mohammed, I [Abu Said Al-Khudri] asked, “Mohammed, sometimes we receive female slaves as our share of the spoils. Naturally, we are concerned about their retaining their value [the sex slaves were worth less money if they were pregnant when sold]. How do you feel about *coitus interruptus*?” Mohammed asked, “Do you do that? It is better not to do that. It is Allah's will whether or not a child is born.”

*Suicide is a sin in Islam, but killing oneself in j̥ihad is not considered suicide; it is actually the highest form of Islam.*

B9,83,29 Our company was traveling to Khaybar with Mohammed when someone called out, “Amir, sing some of your camel-driving songs.” He complied, singing several songs whose rhythm mimicked the gait of camels. Mohammed was pleased and asked, “Who is that man?” “Amir,” someone

told him. Mohammed then said, “May Allah show mercy to him.” Several of us said, “Mohammed, we hope that you will let him stay with us for a while,” but he was killed early the next day.

We were very upset. Several people remarked, “It is too bad that all of Amir’s good deeds have gone to waste, because he is damned for killing himself.” When I heard those remarks, I went to Mohammed and said, “Prophet of Allah, I would sacrifice my father for you, but the people say that Amir is damned.” Mohammed said, “Then those people lie. Amir will be doubly rewarded because he strove to be obedient to Allah, and he fought in jihad. No other death would bring so great a reward.”

*In jihad, patience is a virtue.*

B4,52,210 Once during battle, Mohammed spoke to the people as the sun was going down and said, “Do not willingly go into battle and beg Allah to protect you from harm. If you do go into battle, have patience and remember that Paradise lies in the shadow of swords.” Mohammed then said, “Allah, bestower of the Koran, master of the elements, conqueror of the pagans, defeat the Kafir and give us victory.”

*Assassination is a tactic of jihad and was used frequently by Mohammed. Not one person in Arabia who opposed or criticized Mohammed lived except by fleeing or converting. Assassinations were common and feared.*

B4,52,265 Mohammed ordered a band of Helpers to assassinate Abu Rafi. One of the group, Abdullah, slipped into his house at night and killed him in his sleep.”

*All Kafirs who resist in any way can be killed as an act of jihad.*

B4,52,286 Mohammed was traveling one time when a Kafir spy came to him. After sitting and talking a while with Mohammed and his companions, the spy departed. Mohammed said, “Chase him down and kill him.” So, I [Al Akwa] did. Mohammed rewarded me with the spy’s possessions and his share of the spoils.

*Captives could be killed or ransomed.*

B4,53,367 Speaking about the captives from the battle of Badr, Mohammed said, “If Al-Mutim were alive and if he asked me to, I would have freed those people for his sake.”

*No death is too painful or fearful for the Kafir. Allah will be even more cruel in Hell for eternity.*

B8,82,795 Mohammed punished the men of the Uraina tribe by cutting off their hands and feet and letting them bleed to death.

*Here we see that Mohammed used propaganda as one of Islam's most valuable weapons of j̣ihad. Allah supports propaganda and the debasement of Kafirs.*

B5,59,449 Mohammed said to Hassan, "Insult them [the Kafirs] with your poetry and Gabriel will protect you."

M031,6074 Mohammed said, "Hassan B. Thibit, satirize and mock the Kafir; Gabriel is by your side." This hadith was narrated with the authority of Shu'ba and the same line of transmitters.

*Jihad is the only sure path to Paradise.*

B9,93,549 Mohammed said, "Allah promises that the Muslim who participates in jihad with no compulsion, other than true faith and the desire to serve Allah, will either be admitted into Paradise, or sent home with Allah's reward or a share of the spoils of war."

*The poetry of this hadith is the most elegant expression of j̣ihad.*

B4,52,73 Mohammed: "Be aware that Paradise lies under the shadow of swords."

*Jihad should be waged at the right time. Haste should never be a priority.*

B4,52,86 Mohammed: "When you prepare to fight your enemy, take your time."

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# THE TEARS OF JIHAD

## CHAPTER 4

These figures are a rough estimate of the death of Kafirs by the political act of jihad found in the Hadith.

### AFRICANS

Thomas Sowell estimates that 11 million slaves were shipped across the Atlantic and 14 million were sent to the Islamic nations of North Africa and the Middle East<sup>[1]</sup>. For every slave captured many others died. Estimates of this collateral damage vary. The renowned missionary David Livingstone estimated that for every slave who reached the plantation five others died by being killed in the raid or died on the forced march from illness and privation<sup>[2]</sup>. So, for 25 million slaves delivered to the market, we have the death of about 120 million people. Islam ran the wholesale slave trade in Africa.<sup>[3]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup>. Thomas Sowell, *Race and Culture*, BasicBooks, 1994, p. 188.

<sup>[2]</sup>. Woman's Presbyterian Board of Missions, *David Livingstone*, p. 62, 1888.

<sup>[3]</sup> Bernard Lewis, *Race and Slavery in the Middle East*, Oxford University Press, 1990.

*120 million Africans*

### CHRISTIANS

The number of Christians martyred by Islam is 9 million<sup>[1]</sup>. A rough estimate by Raphael Moore in *History of Asia Minor* is that another 50 million died in wars by jihad. So to account for the 1 million African Christians killed in the 20th century we have:

<sup>[1]</sup>. David B. Barrett, Todd M. Johnson, *World Christian Trends AD 30-AD 2200*, William Carey Library, 2001, p. 230, table 4-10.

*60 million Christians*

### JEWS

The Jews had no political control over any country and their deaths were limited to a few thousand killed in riots.

## HINDUS

Koenard Elst in *Negationism in India*<sup>[1]</sup> gives an estimate of 80 million Hindus killed in the total jihad against India. The country of India today is only half the size of ancient India, due to jihad. The mountains near India are called the Hindu Kush, meaning the “funeral pyre of the Hindus”.

<sup>[1]</sup>. Koenard Elst, *Negationism in India*, Voice of India, New Delhi, 2002, pg. 34.

*80 million Hindus*

## BUDDHISTS

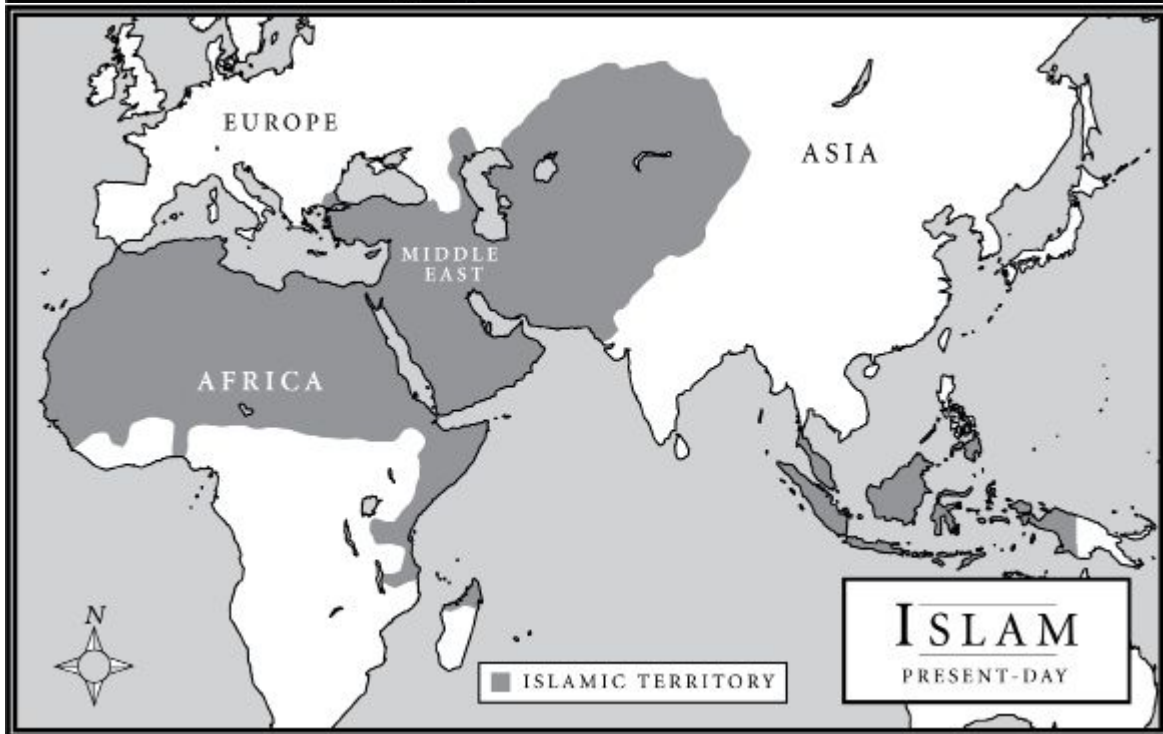
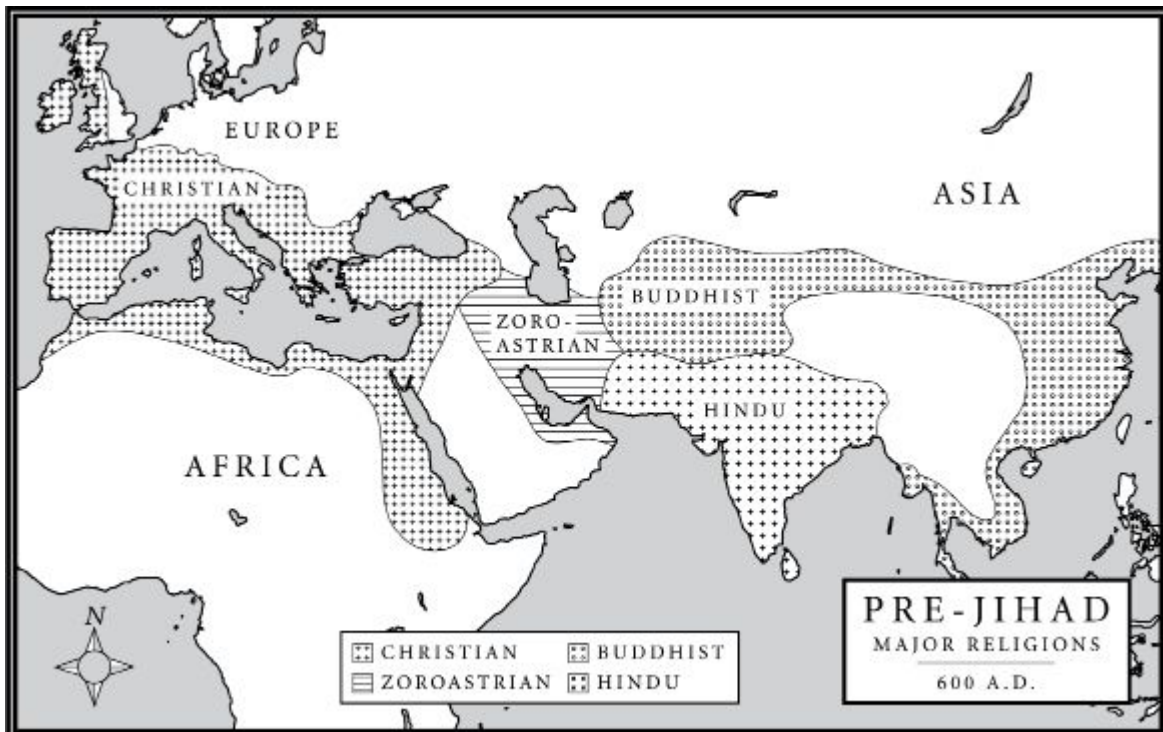
Buddhists do not keep up with the history of war. Keep in mind that in jihad only Christians and Jews were allowed to survive as dhimmis (third-class citizens under Sharia); everyone else had to convert or die. Jihad killed the Buddhists in Turkey, Afghanistan, along the Silk Route, and in India. The total is roughly 10 million<sup>[1]</sup>.

<sup>[1]</sup>. David B. Barrett, Todd M. Johnson, *World Christian Trends AD 30-AD 2200*, William Carey Library, 2001, p. 230, table 4-1.

*10 million Buddhists*

## TOTAL

This gives a rough estimate of 270 million killed by jihad.



# THE DHIMMIS

## CHAPTER 5

*5:92 Obey Allah, and obey the Messenger, and be on your guard. If you do turn back, know that our Messenger is only bound to deliver a plain announcement.*

Mohammed took his army a hundred miles from Medina to Khaybar and attacked the Jews. Islam was totally victorious. After taking the property of the Jews as the spoils of war, the Muslims made an agreement called a *dhimma* with the Jews in Arabia. The Jews could stay and farm the land if they gave Islam half their profits. They then became *dhimmis* who were under the protection of Islam.

Thus the word dhimmi came to mean permanent, second-class Kafir citizens in a country ruled by Islam. Dhimmis paid a special tax, and their civil and legal rights were greatly limited. The only way out of being a dhimmi was to convert to Islam or flee. The taxes from the dhimmis made Islam rich.

There are very few hadiths about dhimmis, but it was another of Mohammed's unique political inventions. The scorched-earth policy of killing all Kafirs was satisfying to the warrior, but it had an inherent problem: once everyone was killed, the warrior had to find other work. Mohammed therefore created the policy of the dhimmi to deal with the Jews. Dhimmi status was expanded later to include Christians, Magians, and others.

Dual ethics is at the very core of the concept of a dhimmi. Political subjugation of Kafirs can only come about by viewing them as separate and apart from Allah's true human beings, Muslims.

It can be argued that the glory of Islam came not from Islam but its dhimmis' wealth and knowledge. The dhimmis were the scholars, since the Arabs of Mohammed's day were barely literate and their classical literature was oral poetry. The secular knowledge of Islam came from the Christians, Persians, Jews and Hindus.

Islam is credited with saving the knowledge of the Greeks from extinction. This is ironic in two ways. First, it was the jihad against the Byzantine/Greek culture that caused its collapse. Secondly, it was the Syrian Christian dhimmis who translated all of the Greek philosophers into Arabic.

The Hindu numbering system was credited to Islam. The Muslims took the zero from Hindu mathematicians, and today we call our numbers Arabic numerals. From carpets to architecture, the Muslims took the ideas of the dhimmis and obtained historical credit. The lists of great Islamic scholars includes the dhimmis with Arabic names living under Islamic dominance.

Over time, as the dhimmi population decreased, the “Golden Age” of Islam disappeared.

*The dhimmis produced the wealth of Islam.*

B4,53,388 Juwairiya said to Umar, “Oh, Caliph, give us your advice.” Umar said, “You should continue the arrangement made by Mohammed regarding the dhimmis because the taxes they pay fund your children’s future.”

*Dhimmitude is privation.*

B4,53,380 Umar drove all the Kafirs from Arabia. After Mohammed conquered Khaybar, he considered expelling the Jews from the land of Allah, Mohammed and the Muslims. However, the Jews asked Mohammed if they could stay in exchange for their servitude and half of each harvest. Mohammed said, “You may stay on those terms as long as it pleases us.” The Jews remained until Caliph Umar drove them from Arabia.

After jihad comes dhimmitude: Jihad cracks open the culture; dhimmitude replaces it with Islam. Afghanistan was a Buddhist nation until conquered by Islam; Pakistan was Hindu; Egypt was the culture of the Pharaohs even though it had become Christian; and North Africa was Christian.

It was Umar II who set the standards for dhimmis. His treaty states:

We shall not build, in our cities or in their neighborhood new monasteries, churches, convents, or monks’ cells, nor shall we repair, by day or by night, such of them as fall in ruins or are situated in the quarters of the Muslims.

We shall keep our gates wide open for passersby and travelers. We shall give board and lodging to all Muslims who pass our way for three days.

We shall not give shelter in our churches or in our dwellings to any spy nor hide him from the Muslims.

We shall not manifest our religion publicly nor convert anyone to it. We shall not prevent any of our kin from entering Islam if they wish



it.

We shall show respect toward the Muslims, and we shall rise from our seats when they wish to sit.

We shall not seek to resemble the Muslims by imitating any of their garments.

We shall not mount on saddles, nor shall we gird swords nor bear any kind of arms nor carry them on our persons.

We shall not engrave Arabic inscriptions on our seals.

We shall not sell fermented drinks.

We shall clip the fronts of our heads (keep a short forelock as a sign of humiliation).

We shall always dress in the same way wherever we may be, and we shall bind the zunar round our waists.

We shall not display our crosses or our books in the roads or markets of the Muslims. We shall only use clappers in our churches very softly. We shall not raise our voices when following our dead. We shall not take slaves who have been allotted to Muslims.

We shall not build houses higher than the houses of the Muslims.

Whoever strikes a Muslim with deliberate intent shall forfeit the protection of this pact.

(from Al-Turtushi, *Siraj Al-Muluk*, p. 229-30)

But this excerpt can not really describe the world of the dhimmi. Islam dominated all public space. The government was Islamic; the education was Islamic; dress was Islamic; literature was Islamic. Only inside the dhimmi's house could there be no Islam. The word of a dhimmi could not be used in court against a Muslim and crimes against dhimmis were rarely prosecuted.

The actual attitude of Islam toward the dhimmis was more contempt than hatred, and over time the dhimmis disappeared. They either left or converted. It was too hard to be a second-class citizen, and the extra taxes were a burden. As time went on both Christians and Jews became more Arabic in their outlook; they started to treat women as the Arabs did and their customs became more and more Islamic. Finally it was easier to accept Islam as their religion and stop all the pressure and contempt.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# THE JEWS

## CHAPTER 6

48:13 *We have prepared a blazing Fire for these Kafirs who do not believe in Allah and His Messenger.*

In Islam's early days, Mohammed began to preach in Mecca where there were a few Jews and a handful of Christians. At first Mohammed's god had no name, but soon it was called Rahman and, then, Allah. There had been a moon god called Allah in Arabia since the dawn of time. Allah was the chief god of the Quraysh, Mohammed's tribe, and Mohammed's father was called Abdullah, slave of Allah. Mohammed said his was the only god and identified Allah with the One-God of the Jews, Jehovah.

Mohammed claimed to be the last in the line of Jewish prophets. The stories in the Koran resembled the Jews' stories of Adam, Moses, Noah, and other figures in Jewish tradition. The Meccans had a great deal of respect for the Jews because they had a sacred text. Indeed, both Jews and Christians were called People of the Book. None of the Arabian religions had a religious book as the native Arabic religions were tribal and based on oral traditions.

Then Mohammed went to Medina. Half of Medina was Jewish. Their leaders did not agree with Mohammed that he was a Jewish prophet. The revelations of the Koran took on a different tone about the Jews. Their scriptures did not agree with Mohammed's, therefore their scriptures were wrong. Clearly they had changed them to oppose Mohammed. Less than two years later, there were no Jews left in Medina, and the Muslims had their possessions.

## DEMEANING HADITHS

B1,12,749 Mohammed: "Say Amen when the Imam says, 'not the path of those who anger You [the Jews] nor the path of those who go astray [the Christians]' everyone who says Amen will have their past sins forgiven."

1:1 *In the name of Allah, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful  
In the Name of Allah, the Compassionate, the Merciful.  
Praise be to Allah, Lord of the worlds.  
The Compassionate, the Merciful. King of the Judgment Day.  
Only You do we worship, and to You alone do we ask for help.*

*Keep us on the straight and narrow path.  
The path of those that You favor; not the path of those who anger  
You [the Jews] nor the path of those who go astray [the Christians].*  
[This sura is repeated every day by Muslims.]

B2,23,457 While walking after dark, Mohammed heard a mournful cry and said, “Jews are being punished in the afterlife.”

*Mohammed claimed the mantle of all the Jewish prophets. He claimed that Allah was Jehovah and that all religious truth came through Allah. Islam has the best claim to Moses.*

B3,31,222 After coming to Medina, Mohammed witnessed the Jews observing a fast on the day of Ashura. Asked about that, they said, “This is a holy day. It celebrates the day God delivered the Jews from their enemy. Moses fasted this day.” Mohammed told them, “Muslims have more right to claim Moses as a prophet than you do.” Consequently, Mohammed fasted that day and required all Muslims to fast on that day.

*Jews lie.*

B3,41,599 Mohammed said anyone who lies under oath with the aim to illegally take a Muslim’s property will face Allah’s wrath. Al-AshAth said, “That statement pertained to me. A Jew and I shared some common land, and he had denied that I was co-owner of the property. I took the dispute before Mohammed, who asked if I had proof of ownership. I said that I did not. Mohammed then asked the Jew to swear an oath that he was the rightful owner of the land. I said, “Mohammed, he will swear a false oath and steal my land.” Therefore, Allah revealed this verse to Mohammed:

*3:77 Those who sell their covenant with Allah and their oaths for a meager price will have no part in the world to come.*

B4,56,662 Mohammed said, “You will imitate the sinful behavior of your ancestors so utterly and completely that if they did something stupid, you would do exactly the same thing.”

We asked, “Are you talking about the Jews and the Christians?”

He answered, “Who else could I be talking about but the Jews and the Christians?”

B4,56,664 Aisha despised the practice of praying with hands on the flanks because that was the way the Jews used to pray.

B4,56,668 Mohammed: “When the head of a Jew or a Christian becomes gray, they refuse to dye their hair. You must do the opposite of their behavior. Therefore, dye your hair and beard when they become gray.”

B6,60,157 Mohammed: “May Allah curse the Jews! Allah ordered them to not eat animal fat, so what do they do? They melt it down, sell it, and invest the proceeds.”

*Jews are the cause of decay and rebellious wives.*

B4,55,547 Mohammed: “If it weren’t for the Jews, meat would not rot. If not for Eve, wives would never disobey their mates.”

B2,23,376 As Mohammed walked past a weeping family of Jews at their daughter’s funeral, he said, “They are crying for her and she is being tortured in the grave.”

M037,6666 Mohammed: “Allah will use a Christian or Jew to substitute for a Muslim in Hell.”

*Some rats are changed Jews.*

M042,7135 Mohammed: “A tribe of Bani Isra’il [Jews] disappeared. I do not know what became of them, but I think they mutated and became rats. Have you noticed that a rat won’t drink camel’s milk, but it will drink goat’s milk?”

*Women as the spoils of war.*

B5,59,512 During the night, just outside Khaybar, Mohammed gave the Fajr Prayer and said, “Allah is great! Khaybar will be in ruins. When we attack a city that has been warned, those people are in for an evil morning.” As the people of Khaybar fled the city, Mohammed ordered the men killed and the women and children enslaved.

Safiya was amongst the captives. She first was the slave of Dahya but later on she belonged to Mohammed. Mohammed made the price of her freedom her wedding dowry.

*To be protected from Islam, the Jew must submit to Islam.*

B9,92,447 We were at the Mosque one day when Mohammed came out and said, “Let’s go talk to the Jews.”

When we arrived at their village, Mohammed addressed them saying, “Jews, submit to Allah. Become Muslim and you will be protected.”

They answered, “You have delivered Allah’s word, Mohammed.”

Mohammed said, “That is my wish, accept Islam and you will be protected.”

They repeated, “You have delivered Allah’s word.”

Mohammed said for a third time, “That is my wish; accept Islam and you will be protected,” before adding, “You need to know that the Earth belongs to Allah, and I intend to expel you from this land. If you have property, you should sell it; otherwise, you had better remember that this land belongs to Allah and Mohammed.”

B4,52,68 During the battle of the Trench, Mohammed paused from fighting, stripped off his weapons, and bathed. Gabriel, covered in dust, revealed himself to Mohammed and said, “You have laid down your weapons. I have not laid my arms down yet.”

Mohammed asked, “Where do you want me to go?”

Gabriel said, “That way,” pointing toward the Jewish camp.

Mohammed armed himself and marched into battle.

When the Jews of Fadak heard what had happened to the Jews of Khaybar, they surrendered before they were even attacked by Mohammed.

B4,52,153 Because the property of the Jews that Allah had given to Mohammed had not been won by the Muslims through the use of their horses and camels, it belonged exclusively to Mohammed. Mohammed used it to give his family their yearly allowance and he spent the rest on weapons and horses for jihad.

### *The Last Days*

B4,52,176 Mohammed: Muslims will fight with the Jews until some of them will hide behind stones. The stones will betray them saying, “Slave of Allah, there is a Jew hiding behind me; kill him.”

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# CHRISTIANS

## CHAPTER 7

4:115 *Anyone who opposes the Messenger after having received Our guidance and follows a path other than that of the true believer will be left to their own devices. We will lead them into Hell, an evil home.*

The Koran says that Christians who submit to Islam can go to Paradise. Every reference to Christians in the Hadith is negative.

A Muslim repeats the following verses daily:

1:5 *Only You do we worship, and to You alone do we ask for help. Keep us on the straight and narrow path. The path of those that You favor; not the path of those who anger You [the Jews] nor the path of those who go astray [the Christians].*

B1,12,749 Mohammed: “Say Amen when the Imam guides you along the right path and says, ‘not the path of the Jews who deserve your anger, nor the way of the Christians who have gone astray.’ All of a Muslim’s past sins are forgiven when they say Amen in concert with the angels.”

*The Christians and Jews who reject Mohammed will go to Hell.*

M001,0284 Mohammed: “According to Allah, any Jew or Christian that is aware of me, but dies before accepting my prophecy will be sent to Hell.”

*Religious apartheid in Arabia.*

B3,39,531 Upon the death of Mohammed, Umar drove the Jews and Christians out of Arabia. Mohammed had intended to do so after he had conquered Khaybar, as the land then became the possession of Allah, Mohammed, and the Muslims. Mohammed granted their request to remain, however, in exchange for their labor and half of the proceeds. Mohammed said, “You may stay under those conditions for as long as we allow it.” Thus they remained until Umar expelled them from Arabia.

B4,56,662 Mohammed warned the people, “You will follow the errant path of those who came before you so completely, that if they did a stupid thing, you would too.” The people asked, “Mohammed, do you mean the Christians and the Jews?” He answered, “Whom else would I mean?”

*The very earth rejects those who criticize Islam and Mohammed.*

B4,56,814 Once there was a Christian who accepted Islam, studied the Koran, and wrote down Allah's revelations to Mohammed. The man later reverted back to Christianity and would say, "Mohammed doesn't know anything except what I have written down for him."

After the man died and was buried, his friends found his body disinterred. They said, "This is the work of Mohammed and his followers. They have pulled him from his grave because he rejected them."

The man's friends dug another, deeper grave and reburied their friend. The next day, however, the man's body was again found thrown from the grave.

His friends again blamed Mohammed and his companions for the act and proceeded to dig another, even deeper grave.

In the morning, the man's friends again found the grave empty and the body thrown on the ground. The man's friends were then convinced that the earth had rejected the man's body and that humans were not to blame, so they left the body on the ground.

M033,6423 Mohammed: "No one is born that is not created according to his true nature. A parent turns his child into a Jew, Christian, or pagan, just as an animal produces an offspring that imitates itself." He then quoted the Koran, "Allah creates man according to his natural state. There can be no alteration by man to what Allah has created. This natural state is the correct religion."

M037,6666 Mohammed: "Allah will fill a Muslim's place in Hell with a Christian or a Jew."

*Muslims believe the Christian scriptures were corrupted to conceal the truth about the superior religion of Islam and Mohammed's superiority to Christ.*

B3, 48, 850 Ibn Abbas: "Muslims, why do you ask the Jews and Christians any questions? The Koran that was revealed to Mohammed contains the latest word from Allah. It has not been altered and you recite it daily. Allah has made clear to you that the Jews and the Christians have distorted the Scriptures that were revealed to them. They have claimed that their alterations are the word of God in order to achieve some material gain."

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# SLAVES

## CHAPTER 8

4:42 *On that day the Kafirs and those who disobeyed the Messenger will wish they could sink into the earth for they cannot hide a single thing from Allah.*

Islam has a complete set of laws concerning slavery. Here are some of the hadiths that form the basis of these Islamic laws. The ethical system of slavery is pure dual ethics.

### RULES, REGULATIONS

*The treatment of a slave includes beatings.*

B7,62,132 Mohammed: “Nobody should beat his wife as he would a slave and then have sex with her that night.”

M001,0131 Mohammed: “If a slave flees his master, Allah does not hear his prayer.”

B3,34,362 Mohammed: “If it is proven that a slave girl has had illegal sex, her master should whip her but should not continue to fault her after she is punished. If it should again be proved that she had illegal sex, her master should whip her but should not fault her after the legal punishment. If she should commit the infraction for a third time, he should sell her for even the smallest price.”

B3,46,723 Mohammed: “Any man that educates his slave girl, teaches her etiquette, grants her freedom, and then marries her will receive a double reward in Paradise. Any slave that accepts Allah’s and his owner’s mastery will be doubly rewarded in Paradise.”

B3,48,827 Uqba married a woman named Um Yahya. He said, “A black slave woman came to me and said, ‘I wet-nursed you and your wife.’” I told Mohammed about this and he turned his head. I walked around and looked him in the face and he said, “How can you remain married to Um Yahya when you know that you both suckled at the same breast?” Mohammed ordered Uqba to divorce Um Yahya.

B3,36,483 Mohammed banned the practice of using slave girls as prostitutes.



B3,46,702 Ibn Umar gave similar verdicts in disputes centering on slaves owned by more than one master, where one owner wished to free the slave from his share of bondage. In cases like that Umar would say, "The slave owner who wishes to free a slave from his share of bondage should completely free the slave if he has the resources to fairly compensate the other owner(s). The other owners should accept the fair price and free the slave."

## SLAVES IN THE DAILY LIFE OF ISLAM

*Slaves are as common as camels in the Hadith, Sira, and Koran. Here are some selections that show the ubiquity of slaves in everyday life.*

B2,15,103 During the days of Mina, Abu Bakr visited Aisha. While Mohammed was lying down, two young slave girls were beating a tambourine. Abu Bakr yelled at them to stop their noise. Mohammed uncovered his face and told Abu Bakr, "Leave them alone. It's the days of 'Id and the days of Mina [festival days]."

Aisha also said, "One time Mohammed was hiding me from public view so that I might watch some black slaves in the Mosque display their skill with weapons.

Umar scolded them for exhibiting themselves in the presence of a Muslim woman, but Mohammed said, "Leave them alone. You Negroes may continue; you have my protection."

B3,27,22 Asma's slave Abdullah once told me that he could hear Asma when she would walk by Al-Hajun. She would say, "May Allah bless His messenger Mohammed."

B3,38,500 We used to graze sheep at Sala. One time, one of our slave-girls saw a dying sheep. She chipped a rock and used it to kill and butcher the animal. My father told everyone, "Don't eat that meat until I speak to Mohammed." My father asked Mohammed if the meat was permissible to eat, and he said that it was. Ubaidullah said, "I admire that girl. Even though she is a slave, she had the courage to slaughter that sheep."

B3,47,743 Mohammed sent for an Immigrant woman who owned a slave skilled in carpentry. Mohammed said to her, "Order your slave to build a pulpit." She did so, and he built a pulpit of tamarisk wood. Upon completion, it was brought to Mohammed who personally lifted and situated the pulpit where you now see it.

B5,58,262 The first Muslims to emigrate from Mecca to Medina were MusAb and Ibn Um Maktum, who taught the Koran to the Helpers. Next came Umar and twenty other followers of Mohammed. When Mohammed came to Medina, he said, “I had never seen the people so happy. Even the slave girls were shouting, ‘ Mohammed is here! ’

B8,73,229 Mohammed was traveling one time and slave called Anjasha was urging the camels to run faster. Mohammed said, “Anjasha, drive the camels with the fine glassware more slowly.” By fine glassware, he meant the female passengers.

## MOHAMMED AND SLAVERY

Islam has the most developed religious attitude, legal framework, social theory, and customs regarding slavery. The term *slave* is a positive one in Islam. Mohammed referred to himself and Muslims as the “slaves of Allah.” Mohammed’s second convert was a slave.

Mohammed himself was involved in every single aspect of slavery. He had non-believing men killed so that the surviving women and children could be made slaves<sup>[1]</sup>; he owned many slaves, some of them black,<sup>[2]</sup> and he gave slaves away for gifts;<sup>[3]</sup> he passed around slaves for the purpose of sex to men who were his chief lieutenants.<sup>[4]</sup> Mohammed stood by while others beat slaves;<sup>[5]</sup> he captured slaves and wholesaled them to raise money for jihad.<sup>[6]</sup> He shared the pleasure of sex with the captured women after conquest.<sup>[7]</sup> One of his favorite sexual partners was a slave who bore him a son.<sup>[8]</sup> He got slaves as gifts from other rulers.<sup>[9]</sup> The very pulpit that he preached from was made by a slave.<sup>[10]</sup> He ate food prepared by slaves.<sup>[11]</sup> He was treated medically by a slave<sup>[12]</sup>. Mohammed had a slave tailor<sup>[13]</sup>. He declared that a slave who ran away from his master would not have his prayers answered.<sup>[14]</sup> He approved an owner’s having sex with his slaves.<sup>[15]</sup> He called himself a slave of Allah.

<sup>[1]</sup>. Guillaume, *Life of Mohammed*, 466.

<sup>[2]</sup>. Ibid., 516.

<sup>[3]</sup>. Ibid., 499.

<sup>[4]</sup>. Ibid., 593.

<sup>[5]</sup>. Ibid., 295.

<sup>[6]</sup>. Ibid., 466.

<sup>[7]</sup>. Ibid., 496.

[8]. William Muir, *The Life of Mohammed* (New York: AMS Press, 1975), 425.

[9]. Ibid.

[10]. Bukhari, Hadith, Volume 1, Book 8, Number 440.

[11]. Ibid., Volume 3, Book 34, Number 295.

[12]. Ibid., Volume 3, Book 36, Number 481.

[13]. Ibid., Volume 7, Book 65, Number 344.

[14]. Muslim, Hadith, Book 001, Number 0131.

[15]. Ibid., Book 008, Number 3383.

## BLACKS

Blacks are mentioned in passing in the hadiths, usually in a negative tone. Mohammed frequently used the term *raisin head* for Ethiopians and Africans.

B1,11,662 Mohammed: “Obey and listen to your ruler, even if he is an Ethiopian with a head like a raisin.”

*Blacks will do evil in the future to Islam.*

B2,26,661 Mohammed: “An Ethiopian with two skinny legs will destroy the Kabah.”

B9,87,163 Mohammed: “In a dream I saw a black woman with messy hair leaving Medina to live in Mahaia. I think that it meant that an epidemic would begin in Medina and would be spread to Mahaia.”

B4,52,309 My [Rafi’s] grandfather asked Mohammed, “We may engage the enemy tomorrow, but we have no knives. How shall we slaughter our animals?”

Mohammed answered, “If you invoke Allah’s name beforehand and you use a tool that causes profuse bleeding, then you may eat. However, do not use a tooth or a nail to slaughter an animal. A tooth is the same as a bone, and it is forbidden to slaughter with a bone. You should not use a nail because that is what the Ethiopians (Africans) use, and we don’t want to copy them.”

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# WOMEN

## CHAPTER 9

3:131 *Obey Allah and His messenger so that you may receive mercy.*

There are many references in the Hadith to women and their place in the world.

### HELL

*Most of those in Hell will be women.*

B1,2,28 Mohammed said, “I have seen the fires of Hell and most of its residents are ungrateful women.” He was asked, “Are they Kafirs, or did they show ingratitude to Allah?” He answered, “They were not grateful to their husbands and not grateful for the kindness shown them.”

*Women are inferior to men in intelligence and religion.*

B1,6,301 While on his way to pray, Mohammed passed a group of women and he said, “Ladies, give to charities and donate money to the unfortunate, because I have witnessed that most of the people in Hell are women.

They asked, “Why is that?”

He answered, “You swear too much, and you show no gratitude to your husbands. I have never come across anyone more lacking in intelligence, or ignorant of their religion than women. A careful and intelligent man could be misled by many of you.”

They responded, “What exactly are we lacking in intelligence or faith?”

Mohammed said, “Is it not true that the testimony of one man is the equal to the testimony of two women?”

After they affirmed that this was true, Mohammed said, “That illustrates that women are lacking in intelligence. Is it not also true that women may not pray nor fast during their menstrual cycle?” They said that this was also true.

Mohammed then said, “That illustrates that women are lacking in their religion.”

*Women are ingrates.*

B2,18,161 During the life of Mohammed, there was a solar eclipse. Mohammed gave the special eclipse prayer and stood upright for a long time. He then alternately bowed and stood for long periods of time before

prostrating himself and finishing the prayer. When he had finished, the eclipse had ended.

Mohammed said, "The moon and the sun are two signs of Allah. They are not eclipsed because of the birth or death of someone. When you look at them, think of Allah."

Some people said, "Mohammed, we saw you reach out to something and then retreat."

Mohammed answered, "I witnessed Paradise, and I reached out my hand toward some wonderful fruit that grows there. If I had been able to return with that fruit, you might have eaten it until the end of time. I also witnessed the fires of Hell. Never have I seen such a dreadful sight. Furthermore, most of the people there were female."

The people wondered, "Why was that?"

Mohammed responded, "Because of their ingratitude." When he was asked if it was because they were ungrateful to Allah, Mohammed said, "No, it is because of their ingratitude toward their husbands and for their ingratitude for the good things they were blessed with. You could be kind and benevolent to a woman all of her life, but if she sees one fault in you, she will say, 'You have never been good to me.'"

## SEX

M008,3367 Mohammed: "If a man wishes to bed his wife and she refuses, Allah will be displeased with her until her husband is pleased with her."

*The man gets exile and one hundred lashes for adultery; the woman is killed.*

B3,49,860 A nomad and another man came before Mohammed, seeking his solution to a dispute.

The nomad said, "Mohammed, use Islamic law to settle our dispute." The other man said, "Yes, we will abide by Allah's law as you dictate."

The nomad began, "My son worked for this man and he fornicated with the man's wife. Some people said that he must be stoned to death; to save him from that punishment, I paid a penalty of one hundred sheep and one slave girl. Then I asked some Islamic scholars who said, "Your son must be given one-hundred lashes and be exiled one year."

Mohammed said, "I will settle this dispute using Allah's law. Your son must be exiled for one year, and he must be lashed one hundred times. The slave-girl and the one hundred sheep will be returned to you." Mohammed

then turned to a companion and said, “Unais, seize this man’s wife. She must be stoned to death.” Consequently, Unais went and stoned the woman to death.

## CLEAN/UNCLEAN

B1,4,228 Fatima asked Mohammed, “My uterus bleeds persistently. I can’t remain clean. Must I forsake praying?” Mohammed said, “No. The bleeding is caused by blood vessels, not your menses. When your cycle begins, refrain from prayer. When the cycle is over, take a bath and resume prayers.”

## INFERIOR STATUS

B2,20,192 Mohammed: “A woman should not travel for more than three days unless accompanied by her husband, or a man whom she cannot marry, like her father, brother, or grandfather.”

M031,5966 Mohammed: “There are many perfect men, but the only perfect women are Mary, the daughter of Imran, Asiya, the wife of Pharaoh, and Aisha (Mohammed’s favorite wife). The superiority of Aisha to other women is like comparing Tharid [an unknown reference] to other foods.”

B2,20,194 Mohammed: “A woman who believes in Allah and the Day of Reckoning may not travel for more than one day unaccompanied by a close male relative.”

M036,6603 Mohammed: “After I am gone, the biggest threat to stability that will remain is the harm done to men by women.”

B3,31,172 Mohammed: “Is it not a fact that women do not pray or fast during menstruation? That is the deficiency in her religion.”

B6,60,51 The Jews used to have an old saying, “If during sex you enter your wife from behind, then your child will have squinty eyes.” Consequently, Allah revealed this verse to Mohammed:

*2:223 Your women are your plowed fields: go into your fields when you like, but do some good deed beforehand and fear Allah. Keep in mind that you will meet Him. Give good news to the believers.*

B3,48,826 Mohammed asked, “Is not the value of a woman’s eye-witness testimony half that of a man’s?” A woman said, “Yes.” He said, “That is because a woman’s mind is deficient.”

B7,62,31 Mohammed: “If anything can be a bad sign, it would be a house, a horse, or a woman.”

B7,62,33 Mohammed: “After I die, the biggest problem that I leave to man is woman.”

B7,62,113 Mohammed: “A woman is like a rib; if you try to straighten her out, she will break. To get any benefit from her, you must leave her crooked.”

*Old age of women is a reason for divorce in Islam. When one of Mohammed’s wives turned forty she made an arrangement to stay in Mohammed’s harem because his wives were guaranteed Paradise, but she gave up sex.*

B7,62,134 Concerning the verse:

*4:128 And if a wife fears cruelty or desertion from her husband, then they are not to blame for coming to a mutual agreement between themselves, for peace is best, although people are often prone to greed.*

Allah’s statement pertains to the man who wishes to divorce his wife and marry another. His wife asks him not to divorce her, but rather keep her without any compulsion to have sex with her or provide for her.

*An abused, beaten, and bruised woman appeared in front of Mohammed.*

B7,72,715 Upon her divorce from Rifaa, a woman married Abdur Rahman. Soon after she went to Aisha, wearing a green veil, and complained of her new husband’s brutality, showing her the discolored bruises on her skin.

Aisha interceded on her behalf with Mohammed saying, “I have never witnessed women being mistreated as much as Muslim women. Look at her bruises. She has been beaten greener than the veil she wears.”

When Abdur Rahman learned that his new wife had complained to Mohammed about his behavior, he went to the prophet accompanied by his two sons from a previous marriage. His wife said, “I have done this man no wrong. Furthermore, he is impotent and as good to me as this floppy fringe that hangs from my robe.”

Abdur Rahman responded, “She lies. I am very virile and can satisfy her, but she doesn’t obey me and she wants to remarry Rifaa.”

Mohammed told the woman, “If that is your wish, you should know that is illegal for you to remarry Rifaa if you have not had sex with Abdur Rahman. Mohammed then looked to the two boys accompanying Abdur Rahman and asked, “Are these your boys?”

Abdur Rahman said, “Yes.”

Mohammed then said to the woman, “You say he is impotent? Those boys look just like him.”

## CREATURES OF PLEASURE

*Kafir women are for the pleasure of Muslim men, and forced sex with captives is approved.*

B5,59,459 Entering the Mosque, Ibn Muhairiz saw Abu Said and asked him whether coitus interruptus is sanctified by Allah.

Abu Said said, “Accompanying Mohammed at the battle of Banu Al-Mustaliq, we were rewarded with Arab captives, including several woman who were very sought-after because celibacy had become quite a hardship. We had planned to practice *coitus interruptus* [when sold as slaves later, the women would bring a lesser price if pregnant] but felt that we should seek instruction first from Mohammed.

Mohammed said, however, “It is better that you not interrupt copulation to prevent pregnancy because if a soul is predestined to exist, then it will exist.”

## MARRIAGE

*The most important part of a woman is her vagina.*

B7,62,81 Mohammed said, “The marriage vow most rightly expected to be obeyed is the husband’s right to enjoy the wife’s vagina.”

B7,62,121 Mohammed: “If a woman refuses her husband’s request for sex, the angels will curse her through the night.”

## TEMPORARY MARRIAGE

*A unique custom of Islam is temporary marriage. For an amount of money, a man can sleep with a woman for three days. Shia Islam still has this custom.*

B7,62,51 Abu Jamra witnessed Ibn Abbas deliver a verdict permitting temporary marriages between jihadists and eligible women. Upon hearing



this verdict, a freed slave of Ibn Abbas asked, “This is only permitted if it is really necessary and woman are hard to come by, correct?”

Ibn Abbas replied, “Yes.”

B7,62,130 Abdullah said, “While on jihad with Mohammed, many of us did not have wives accompanying us. We asked whether we should get castrated?” Mohammed ordered us not to do that, and he gave us permission to take temporary wives before reciting this verse.

*5:87 O, you who believe, do not forbid the good things that Allah allows you, but do not commit excess for Allah does not love those who commit excess.*

M008,3248 We went to Jibir B. Abdullah’s home when he came to perform Umra. There the people asked him about many things, among them the temporary marriage. He said, “Yes, we have enjoyed the temporary marriage while Mohammed was alive and also during the reigns of Abu Bakr and Umar.”

## RULES

B7,72,815 Allah’s curse is on women that either give or receive tattoos; those that pluck their facial hair and those that do anything to alter their natural appearance. If such actions are cursed by Allah and Mohammed, why should I presume to treat such women differently? This is revealed in the Koran:

*59:7 ...take what the Messenger has offered you, and refuse what he has forbidden you. And fear Allah, for Allah is severe in His punishment.*

B7,62,133 A woman from the Helpers had a daughter whose hair began to fall out soon after she became wed. The woman asked Mohammed his advice saying, “My daughter’s husband suggests that she wear a wig.” Mohammed said, “Don’t let her do that. Allah curses women who wear artificial hair.”

B3,38,508 Mohammed said, “Unais, confront this man’s wife and if she admits committing adultery have her stoned to death.”

B8,82,803 Ali had a woman stoned to death on a Friday and said, “I have punished her as Mohammed would have.”

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# SEX

## CHAPTER 10

*8:20 Believers! Be obedient to Allah and His messenger, and do not turn your backs now that you know the truth. Do not be like the ones who say, "We hear," but do not obey.*

### RULES ABOUT SEX

B1,4,143 Mohammed: "If, before having sex with his wife, a man says, 'In the name of Allah, shield us from Satan and protect the off-spring of our union from Satan.' Then if it is ordained that a child should be conceived, Satan will be powerless to harm that child."

M002,0566 After staying the night in Aisha's home, a man washed his clothes after waking. Aisha told him, "If you saw some semen, washing the spot would serve to purify the garment. If the spot was not visible, then sprinkling water around it would suffice. When I see semen on Mohammed's clothes, I merely scrape it off and he says a prayer while getting dressed."

B1,5,280 Um Sulaim, Abu Talha's wife, went to Mohammed and asked, "Mohammed, obviously, Allah does not shrink from speaking the truth to you. Must a woman bathe after having a wet dream?" Mohammed answered, "Yes, if she had a discharge."

B1,5,290 Mohammed: "When a man is encompassed by a woman and has had sex with her, a ritual bath is necessary."

B8,74,312 Mohammed: "There are five things that prophets have in common: circumcision, shaved pubic hair, plucked armpits, a closely trimmed moustache, and trimmed finger nails."

### SEXUAL MUTILATION

M037,6676 A man was accused of fornicating with one of Mohammed's slave girls. Mohammed said to Ali, "Go and kill this man." Ali found the man cooling himself in a well, and said, "Come out." When the man emerged from the well, however, Ali noticed that the man had been castrated. Seeing this, Ali spared the man's life. Ali returned to Mohammed and explained, "The man does not have a penis."

*This hadith refers to the circumcision of female genitalia. The Sunna of Mohammed is that he never forbade the removal of the clitoris, a common custom of his day.*

M003,0684 An argument arose in Medina between a group of Helpers and Immigrants concerning bathing. The Helpers believed that bathing after sex was obligatory only if there is an ejaculation. The Immigrants believed that a bath is always obligatory after sex. Abu Musa said, "Let me settle the matter." He went to Aisha and asked and received her permission to speak. He said, "Aisha, beloved of the prophet, I want to question you about an embarrassing matter." Aisha said, "Do not be shy. Speak to me as you would your mother." Abu Musa then said, "When is a bath obligatory?" Aisha responded, "You have asked the right person. Mohammed has said that a bath is obligatory when a man is encompassed by a woman and their circumcised genitalia touch."

## JIHAD AND SEXUAL CONDUCT

B7,62,130 Several of us became sexually frustrated while on jihad with no women. We asked Mohammed whether we should castrate ourselves. He forbade us from that action, but he did give us permission to take a temporary wife, which we could have simply by giving a woman a garment." Abdullah then recited the Koran:

*5:87 O, you who believe, do not forbid the good things that Allah allows you, but do not commit excess for Allah does not love those who commit excess.*

*Rape of a Kafir female captive is j̄ihad.*

B7,62,137 Receiving female slaves as shares of spoils of war, we would practice coitus interruptus with them to avoid unwanted pregnancy. We asked Mohammed his opinion, and he asked us three times, "Do you really remove yourself?" He then said, "No soul that is not preordained to exist will be created."

## LAWS ABOUT SEX

B3,48,817 Mohammed ordered an unmarried man exiled for a year and that he be lashed one hundred times for having illegal sexual intercourse.

B3,49,860 A Bedouin and another man went to Mohammed and the Bedouin said, "Settle our dispute using the laws of Allah." The other man

said, “Yes, let Allah’s law settle our dispute.” The Bedouin said, “My son worked for this man and had illegal sex with his wife. Some said that my son must be stoned to death. To save my son, I gave a ransom of one hundred sheep and a slave girl. Islamic scholars, however, said that my son must be lashed one hundred times and be exiled for a year.” Mohammed said, “According to Allah’s law, your son must be lashed one hundred times and be exiled for a year. The sheep and the slave girl must be returned to you.” Mohammed then said, “Unais, seize that man’s wife and stone her until she is dead.” Unais then went and stoned the woman to death.

## MISCELLANEOUS

B7,72,774 Mohammed cursed effeminate men and masculine women. He said, “Throw such people from your homes.” Mohammed ordered such a man to be turned out and Umar ordered such a woman turned out.

B4,54,460 Mohammed: “If a man asks his wife for sex and she refuses, causing him to go to sleep angry, the angels will curse her the entire night.”

M008,3363 Jabir said that the Jews had an expression which said, “When a man has sex with his wife from behind, their child will have squinty eyes.” Consequently, the verse was revealed,

*2:223 Your women are your plowed fields: go into your fields when you like, but do some good deed beforehand and fear Allah. Keep in mind that you will meet Him. Give good news to the believers.*

M008,3365 Mohammed: “It is all right if a man wants to enter his wife from behind or from on top, but he should enter the vagina.”

*A Kafir captive woman could be used for sex even if she was married and her husband was present.*

M008,3432 Abu Sa’id Al-Khudri relates that while Mohammed was at the Battle of Hunain he sent a detachment to Autas and defeated the enemy there. Although Mohammed’s soldiers captured many females, they were reluctant to force sex with them because their husbands were polytheists. Allah, however, then revealed to them that it was permissible as soon as a woman’s menstrual cycle ended.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# APOSTATES

## CHAPTER 11

33:21 *You have an excellent example in Allah's Messenger for those of you who put your hope in Allah and the Last Day and who praise Allah continually.*

In Islam the option of killing an apostate, one who leaves Islam, is spelled out the Hadith, the Sira, and the early history of Islam after Mohammed's death.

*When Mohammed died, entire tribes wanted to leave Islam. The first wars fought by Islam were against these apostates, and thousands were killed.*

B2,23,483 After the death of Mohammed, Abu Bakr became the caliph, and he declared war against a group of Arabs who reverted back to paganism.

Umar asked Abu Bakr, "How can you war against these men when you remember that Mohammed said, 'I have been ordered by Allah to continue the fight until all the people say, "There is no god except Allah," and whoever says this will have his life and possessions protected from my anger. The exceptions being legal regulations that are adjudicated by man; Allah will settle all accounts.

Abu Bakr said, "I will fight those who argue that no difference exists between the tax [the poor tax was a Muslim obligation] and the prayer. The tax is an obligation put upon man by Allah. If someone should refuse to pay me even the smallest amount that they used to pay during the time of Mohammed, then I will fight them for doing so."

Umar then said, "Allah spoke to Abu Bakr, and I now know that he was right."

B9,83,17 Mohammed: "A Muslim who has admitted that there is no god but Allah and that I am His prophet may not be killed except for three reasons: as punishment for murder, for adultery, or for reverting back to non-belief after accepting Islam."

B9,84,57 Ali ordered that some atheists brought before him be burnt to death. Upon hearing this, Ibn Abbas said, "If it were me, I would not have ordered them burnt. Mohammed told us, 'Don't punish people with fire. That is Allah's punishment.' I would have done as Mohammed instructed, 'Whoever turns his back on Islam, kill him.'"

*Killing false Muslims is rewarded by Allah.*

B9,84,64 If I [Ali] relate something to you that Mohammed said, I swear to Allah that I would rather be smashed to pieces than to put false words in his mouth. However, if I were to say something other than a Hadith to you, then it may very well be false because I may seek to trick my enemies.

Without question I heard Mohammed say, “In the final days there will be young fools who will say all the appropriate things, but their conviction won’t go any further than their words, and they will flee their faith like an arrow flies from a bow. Wherever you find such people, kill them. Whoever kills them will be rewarded on Judgment day.”

*No punishment is too great for the apostate.*

B8,82,797 Some people came to Medina and soon became ill, so Mohammed sent them to the place where the camels were sheltered and told them to drink camel urine and milk as a remedy. They followed his advice, but when they recovered, they killed the shepherd guarding the camels and stole the herd.

In the morning, Mohammed heard what the men had done and ordered their capture. Before noon, the men were captured and brought before Mohammed. He ordered that their hands and feet be cut off and their eyes gouged out with hot pokers. They were then thrown on jagged rocks, their pleas for water ignored and they died of thirst.

Abu said, “They were thieves and murderers who abandoned Islam and reverted to paganism, thus attacking Allah and Mohammed.”

*Kill the apostate.*

B9,89,271 A certain Jew accepted Islam, but then reverted to his original faith. Muadh saw the man with Abu Musa and said, “What has this man done?”

Abu Musa answered, “He accepted Islam, but then reverted to Judaism.”

Muadh then said, “It is the verdict of Allah and Mohammed that he be put to death and I’m not going to sit down unless you kill him.” [Death is the sentence for apostasy, leaving Islam.]

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# SATAN AND SUPERSTITIONS

## CHAPTER 12

47:33 *Believers! Obey Allah and the messenger, and do not let your effort be in vain.*

### MAGIC

B7,71,636 Mohammed said, “There is no disputing the existence of an evil eye.” He also forbade tattooing.

### SATAN

M023,5046 Mohammed: “Satan is with you in everything that you do. He is there when you are eating, therefore if you drop any food from your mouth, you should brush away any dirt and eat it. Do not leave any for Satan. When you finish eating, lick your fingers clean, because you do not know where the blessing resides in the food.”

M024,5279 Mohammed: “The bell is Satan’s musical instrument.”

B4,54,492 Someone mentioned to Mohammed a man that slept long after sunrise. Mohammed said, “Satan has urinated in that man’s ears.”

B4,54,500 Mohammed: “At dusk, keep your children near, because the devil is out. After an hour they may roam. Invoke Allah’s name and close your house gates at night. Invoke Allah’s name and cover your dishes. If your dishes lack covers, then place some wood or something over them.

B4,54,509 Mohammed: “Satan causes yawning. If any of you yawn, stop as soon as you can. If you are yawning, before you know it, Satan will be causing you mischief.”

B7,69,527 Mohammed: “At dusk, keep your children inside, because that is when the devils roam. After an hour of night, however, they may go to their rooms and you may invoke Allah and close your doors. Satan can not open a shut door. Invoke Allah and cap your water bottle; invoke Allah and cover your dishes. Cover them however you may, and turn out your lights.”

### JINNS AND SPIRITS

*Jinns are nonmaterial creatures who can help and hurt humans. Humans are made from earth and jinns are made from fire. Jinns occur in the Koran as well; one sura is titled “The Jinns.”*



B4,54,533 Mohammed: “Put lids on your pots and pans, cover your dishes, and put the cap on the water bottle at night. Lock your doors and keep a close eye on your children at night because that is when the jinns run amuck. Upon going to bed, put out the lights so that a rat can’t cause a fire and burn the house down.”

B5,58,199 Masruq and I [Abdur-Rahman] were talking and I asked him, “Who told Mohammed about the jinns listening to the Koran?” He replied, “Your father, Abdullah, told me that Mohammed heard about them from a tree.”

B5,58,200 One time, Mohammed asked, “Who are you?” I answered, “Abu Huraira.” He said, “Get me some stones so I may wipe my anus, and take care that you don’t bring me any dried dung or bone.”

Later I asked him what was the significance of the bone and the dung and he said, “That is what jinns eat.”

The jinn delegate from Nasibin—a very charming jinn—asked that they might have the residue from human food. I interceded with Allah for them that they might never be hungry as long as there was dung and bones for them to feed upon.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# MEDICINE, HEALTH, SCIENCE

## CHAPTER 13

*3:32 Say: Obey Allah and His messenger, but if they reject it, then truly, Allah does not love those who reject the faith.*

### SCIENCE

B4,54,421 One day as the sun was setting, Mohammed asked me [Abu Dhar], “Do you know where the sun goes at night?” I said, “You and Allah know better than I.” Mohammed said, “It travels until it sits under the throne of Allah where it waits until permission is given to rise. A day will come when the sun will not be allowed to rest, nor continue on its regular path. It will instead be ordered to return the way it came and will rise in the west. That is how I interpret Allah’s revelation:

*36:37 The night is a sign for them. We withdraw it from the day and plunge them into darkness, and the sun runs its mandated course.*

B9,93,476 Mohammed: “There are five unseen keys known only to Allah: only Allah knows what will happen tomorrow; only Allah knows whether a child will be born as a male or a female; only Allah can predict the weather; only Allah knows when and where a person will die.”

B8,74,246 Mohammed said, “Allah created Adam in the perfect human shape and size, nearly ninety feet tall. When Allah created Adam, he said, ‘Go and introduce yourself to the angels sitting there. Pay attention to their greeting because that is the manner in which you and your descendents will greet others.’ Adam went to the angels and said, ‘As-Salamu Alaikum (Peace be upon you).’ The angels responded, ‘As Salamu-Alaika wa Rahmatullah (Peace and Allah’s mercy be on you).’”

Mohammed also said, “Everyone entering Paradise will do so in the perfect and original form and shape of Adam, rather than their present stature, which is continually diminishing.”

B4,55,549 Mohammed said about human conception, for the first forty days after conception, each of us forms in a mother’s womb. The next forty days is spent as a clot of blood, and the next forty as a bit of flesh. Then an angel is sent by Allah to write four determining words that signify a persons destiny: his actions, his time of death, his occupation, and whether he will be blessed or cursed by Allah. A soul is then infused in his body.

B4,55,546 Hearing of Mohammed's imminent arrival in Medina, Abdullah went to him and said, "I have three questions for you that only a prophet can answer: What is the first sign of the Hour of Reckoning? What will be the first meal served in Paradise? Why does a child look like his father, and why will it look like it's mother's brother?"

Mohammed said, "Gabriel has just given me those answers." Abdullah said, "Of all the angels, Gabriel is the greatest enemy of the Jews." Mohammed continued, "The first sign of the judgment is a great fire that unites the people of the east and the west; the people of Paradise will first dine on fish liver; if during intercourse the man climaxes first, the resulting child will look like him, if the woman climaxes first, then the child will look like her."

## CURES

B4,54,483 In Mecca, I [Abu] often sat with Ibn Abbas. One time I had a fever and he told me, "Take Zam-zam water [a well in Mecca] to relieve a fever because Mohammed said a fever is caused by the heat from the fires of Hell; alleviate it with water, or Zam-zam water."

B7,67,446 Mohammed was asked about a mouse that fell into some butter fat and died. He said to dispose of the mouse and the butter-fat around it, but keep and eat the remaining butter fat."

B7,71,673 Mohammed: "If a fly drops into a container of liquid, submerge it in the liquid and throw the fly away. In one wing of the fly is a disease, but in the other is a cure for the disease."

B7,71,591 While traveling to Medina, Ghalib contracted an illness. Ibn Abi Atiq went to him and told us, "Treat the illness with black cumin. Grind five or seven seeds and add oil. Drop the mixture in both nostrils because Aisha related to me that she heard Mohammed say that black cumin can cure any disease except As-Sam. Aisha asked, 'What is As-Sam?' Mohammed replied, 'Death.'"

B7,71,592 I [Abu Huraira] was there when Mohammed said, "Black cumin can cure every disease except death."

B7,71,611 My son suffered from a disease of the throat and tonsils which I [Um Qais] had treated by pressing my fingers on his palate and tonsils. I took the boy with me to see Mohammed, and he asked me, "Why do press

your son's throat and cause him pain? Treat him with Indian incense. It cures seven diseases, including pleurisy. To treat throat and tonsil disease, it is used as a snuff, and to treat pleurisy, it is placed in one side of the mouth."

*Mohammed on disease.*

B7,71,614 A man said to Mohammed, "My brother suffers from diarrhea." Mohammed said, "Tell him to drink honey." The man returned to Mohammed and said, "He drank the honey, but it made his condition worse." Mohammed said, "Allah tells the truth and your brother's stomach tells a lie."

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# BODILY FUNCTIONS

## CHAPTER 14

*58:20 Those who oppose Allah and His Messenger will be laid low.*

Since Mohammed is the ideal pattern of Islam, and being a Muslim entails copying all his actions, the hadiths go into great detail about Mohammed's bodily functions. Here are a very few samples:

### URINATION / DEFECATION

M002,0504 Salman testified that he was told: "You learn everything that you need to know from Mohammed, even about feces." Salman replied, "Yes. Mohammed has forbade us from facing the kiblah [Mecca] while defecating or urinating, or from wiping the anus with the right hand or wiping with fewer than three pebbles or with animal dung or a piece of bone."

B1,4,144 When Mohammed went to relieve himself, he would say, "Allah, protect me from evil spirits and from wicked actions."

B1,4,146 Mohammed: "If anyone must relieve themselves while in an open area, they should not face toward or away from Mecca. Instead, they should either turn to the west or the east."

B1,8,388 Mohammed said, "Do not face toward or away from Mecca while defecating. Instead face either west or east." Abu Aiyub also said, "Arriving in Sham, we found toilets facing Mecca. So, we used them, but turned our faces sideways and begged Allah to forgive us."

B1,4,147 It is commonly said, "While sitting and using the toilet, do not face Mecca." I [Abdullah] say to them, "One time, on the roof of my house, I saw Mohammed sitting on a couple of bricks while relieving himself. He was facing Jerusalem, but a screen shielded him."

B1,4,156 Mohammed: "Do not hold your penis or clean your genitals with your right hand. When drinking, do not breathe into the cup."

M003,0729 Upon entering a toilet, Mohammed would say: "Allah, protect me from that which is evil and foul smelling."

B1,4,163 Mohammed: "When performing ablution, a person should place water in his nostrils and blow it out. Anyone that wipes his anus with stones

should use an odd number of stones. Upon waking, a person should wash his hands before performing ablution because no one knows where his hands have been while sleeping.”

## FLATULENCE

B1,4,137 Mohammed: “A person at prayer who either urinates, defecates, or breaks wind must repeat ablution, or his prayer will not be accepted.”

B1,4,139 Mohammed was asked by my uncle about an acquaintance who suspected that he may have broken wind while praying. Mohammed said, “Unless he either hears or smells something, he should not stop praying.”

B1,8,436 Mohammed: “As long as a person is properly praying and does not break wind, the angels will continue to ask Allah’s forgiveness for you. The angels say, ‘Allah be merciful. Forgive him.’”

B8,73,68 Mohammed outlawed laughing at someone for breaking wind.

## SPITTING

B1,8,404 Mohammed: “Nobody should spit directly in front of himself or to his right, rather he should spit to his left or beneath his foot.”

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# ANIMALS

## CHAPTER 15

*8:46 Obey Allah and His messenger, and do not argue with one another for fear that you will lose courage and strength.*

### DOGS

B1,4,173 Mohammed: “It is vital that a dish be washed seven times if a dog drinks from it.”

B3,39,515 Mohammed: “One Qirat’s worth of reward shall be deducted daily from a person’s accumulated good deeds for owning a dog that doesn’t hunt or guard a farm.”

B7,67,389 Mohammed: “Anyone who keeps a dog as merely a pet, and not a hunting or guard dog, shall have two Qirats deducted every day from his accumulated good deeds.”

B1,9,490 I [Aisha] was told of several things that can negate a prayer. I was told, “Prayer is nullified by a dog, an ass, or a woman that passes before people in prayer.” I said, “You have turned women into dogs.”

M004,1032 Mohammed said, “If any of you stand for prayer with an object as big as a saddle’s rear in front of you, or if an ass, a woman, or a black dog passes in front of you, your prayer will be blocked.” Someone asked, “Abu Dharr, what is it about a black dog that makes it different from a red or a yellow dog?” Abu Dharr said, “I asked the same thing of Mohammed, and he said, “A black dog is a devil.”

M010,3813 Mohammed gave an order to kill dogs, which we obeyed so faithfully that we even killed the dog that accompanied a woman coming from the desert. Mohammed later rescinded this order, but he did say, “It is your obligation to kill a black dog even if it has white spots over the eyes because it is a devil.”

B3,34,439 Mohammed banned receiving money in exchange for a dog, in exchange for sex, or in exchange for fortune telling.

### SNAKES

B4,54,518 I [Ibn Umar] witnessed Mohammed give a sermon. He said, “Kill snakes when you can. Take special care to kill any snake with two

white lines down its back, or a snake with a stumpy or mutilated tail. They cause blindness and miscarriages.”

B4,54,527 Mohammed: “Kill snakes with two white lines on their backs; they cause blindness and miscarriages.”

B4,54,529 It was Ibn Umar’s practice to kill snakes, but later he forbade the practice. He said, “One time Mohammed saw a snake skin that had been recently shed. He said, ‘Find that snake and kill it.’ It was because of this that I would kill snakes. I changed my practice when later Abu Lubaba told me that Mohammed had said, ‘Do not kill all snakes, just those that have shortened or mutilated tails with two white lines down the back. Kill those snakes because they cause blindness and miscarriages.’”

## OTHER ANIMALS

B4,55,579 Mohammed ordered that salamanders should be killed because, “They spit fire on Abraham.”

B3,36,484 Mohammed banned the accepting of money for breeding fees.

B4,52,115 Mohammed allotted two shares of spoils of war to each horse and one share to each rider who participated in jihad.

B3,29,54 Mohammed: “It is not a sin for a pilgrim to slay certain animals: Crows, kites, mice, scorpions, and rabid dogs.”

M020,4621 Mohammed: “Allah’s blessings reside in the forelocks of war horses.”

M035,6581 Mohammed: “If you hear a cock crowing, ask Allah for His good will because the cock sees angels. If you hear a donkey braying, ask Allah for His protection, because the donkey sees Satan.”

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*



# ART

## CHAPTER 16

*4:170 People! The Messenger has come to you with truth from your Lord. If you believe, it will be better for you. But if you do not believe, know that all that is in the heavens and earth belongs to Allah. Allah is all-knowing and wise!*

B7,72,843 Mohammed grew depressed one day after Gabriel's promised visit was delayed. When Gabriel came at last, Mohammed complained about the delay. Gabriel said to him, "Angels will not enter a house that contains a dog or a picture."

B8,73,130 There was once a curtain with pictures of animals on it in my [Aisha's] house. When Mohammed saw it, his face became flushed with anger. He tore it to bits and said, "People that paint such pictures will receive Hell's most terrible punishment on Judgment Day."

B4,54,447 One time I [Aisha] created a stuffed pillow for Mohammed and decorated it with pictures of animals. He came in with some other people one day, and I noticed a look of excitement on his face. I asked, "What is wrong?" He replied, "What is that pillow doing here?" I answered, "I made that for you so that you could lie on it." He said, "Are you not aware that angels will not enter a house with pictures in it and that the person that makes such pictures will be punished on Judgment Day until he gives life to that which he has made?"

B3,34,428 Ibn Abbas and I were together one day when a man came to him and said, "Ibn Abbas, I am a painter and my livelihood comes from these pictures." Ibn Abbas said, "I only know what Mohammed tells me, and I heard him say, 'Anyone who paints a portrait will continue to receive Allah's punishment until he can bring the picture to life, which of course, a man can not do.'"

The man turned pale and he breathed a heavy sigh upon hearing this. Ibn Abbas said, "That is a shame. If you must make pictures, then my advice is to make pictures of inanimate objects, like trees."

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# MOHAMMED

## CHAPTER 17

64:12 *So obey Allah and His messenger. But if you turn your backs to them, Our messenger is not to blame, for his duty is only to deliver Our warning clearly.*

### HIS PHYSICAL APPEARANCE

B7,72,791 Qatada asked Anas to describe Mohammed's hair. Anas said, "Mohammed's hair reached almost to his shoulders. It was wavy. Not straight, but not very curly, either.

B7,72,793 Mohammed had a unique look to him. He had big feet and hands, but his palms were soft.

B4,56,751 Mohammed was of average height and had wide shoulders and long hair. I saw him wearing a red cloak one time, and I thought he was the most handsome man I had ever seen.

### MOHAMMED'S WHITENESS

*There are many hadiths that report Mohammed's whiteness.*

B4,56,765 When Mohammed prostrated himself to pray, he would spread his arms so wide apart, that we could see his armpits. Ibn Bukair described it as "the whiteness of his armpits."

B9,90,342 At the battle of Al-Ahzab, Mohammed helped us carry dirt to the fortifications. We could see the dust covering his white belly.

B1,3,63 We were sitting with Mohammed in the Mosque one day when a man rode up on a camel. He asked, "Which one of you is Mohammed?" We answered, "That white man leaning on his arm..."

### HIS ANGER

*There are many hadiths about Mohammed's anger.*

B1,2,19 If Mohammed ordered a Muslim to do something, he made sure that it was something that was easily done, something within their limits of strength or endurance. Still, many complained, "Mohammed, we can't do that. We are not like you. Allah has freed you from all sin." The anger was apparent on Mohammed's face and he said, "No one fears Allah more than I, and I know Allah better than any of you."

B1,3,90 A man once said to Mohammed, “I may not be able to go to the obligatory prayer because our Imam is very long-winded when he leads the ceremony.” The narrator continued, “I had never seen Mohammed more angry. He said, ‘Some of you are making the others dislike praying. If you lead the prayers, then you should keep it brief. Some of the people are sick, weak, or simply have work to do.’”

## HIS WIFE AISHA

*Aisha was his favorite wife. This dream occurred when she was six.*

M031,5977 Aisha quotes Mohammed: “Three nights in a row I saw you in a dream. An angel delivered you wrapped in silks and said, ‘This is your wife.’ As I unwrapped the silk, your face appeared. I said, ‘If this dream is indeed from Allah, then let Him make it happen.’”

M008,3309 Mohammed and I [Aisha] were married when I was six. I was brought to his house when I was nine. We moved to Medina where I fell sick with a fever for a month. My hair fell out as a result of the illness. My mother, Umm Ruman, came for me one day as I was playing on a swing with some friends. I had no idea what she wanted, but she took me by the hand and had me stand by the door of our house. I was out of breath, but when I had composed myself, my mother took me inside and handed me over to some of the Helper women who proceeded to wish me good luck. The women washed me and made me pretty. Mohammed came in the morning and I was given to him.

M031,5981 Aisha relates that she and her friends often played with dolls while Mohammed was present, but when he came over, her friends would hide from him because of shyness. He would, however, call them back to play with her.

## SEX

B1,5,249 Narrated by Maimuna, a wife of Mohammed: After sex, Mohammed purified himself just as he would for prayer except that he would not wash his feet. He would rinse off the semen and vaginal secretions from his penis and then pour water over the rest of his body. He would then remove his feet from the bathtub and wash them. That was how Mohammed cleaned himself after sex.

B7,71,660 Magic was used upon Mohammed that caused him to think that he had sex with his wives, when in fact he had not. One day he said to Aisha, "I have had a revelation from Allah about that problem that has been bothering me. Two men came to me in a dream; one of them sat by my head and the other at my feet. The first one asked the other, 'What is this man's problem?' The other replied, 'He is under a magic spell.' The first man asked, 'Who's spell is he under?' The other man answered, 'Labid, a hypocrite and an ally of the Jews.' The first man then asked the other, 'What was used to cast the spell?' 'A comb with Mohammed's hair in it,' he was told. 'Where is this comb?' the first man asked. 'In a bag made from a date palm. It is hidden under a rock in the Dharwan well,' the other man told him."

Mohammed went to Dharwan and removed the bag containing the comb. He said, "That was the well I saw in my dream. Its water was the color of Henna and the date palms surrounding it resembled the heads of devils. I took out the bag with the hexed comb in it." Aisha said to Mohammed, "Why didn't you take Nashra to treat your malady?" Mohammed said, "It was not necessary. Allah had already cured me. Besides, I don't want evil (magic) to establish itself among the people."

## HABITS

B1,4,169 Mohammed would perform all tasks by working from right to left. This included putting on his shoes, combing his hair, or washing himself.

B1,6,298 Mohammed and I [Aisha] would bathe together after sex in the same tub. During my period, he would have me wear a dress that only covered me from the waist down and he would fondle me. He would also let me wash his head while I was menstruating.

B7,65,292 Mohammed preferred to begin things from the right side; combing his hair, putting on his shoes, or performing ablution. He would follow this practice in every thing he did.

M023,5018 Anas said that Mohammed forbade people to drink while standing. Qatada related: We asked him, "What about eating while standing?" Anas said, "That is even more objectionable."

M023,5029 Anas related the story that Mohammed would drink his refreshments in three gulps.

M023,5037 Mohammed: “When a Muslim eats, they should not wipe their hand until it is licked clean, either by themselves or by someone else.”

M024,5234 Mohammed made it illegal for a man to eat with his left hand or walk with only one sandal on. He also forbade a man to wear a garment that had no opening for the arms to extend or support himself when wearing a single garment that might expose his genitalia.

M024,5238 Mohammed: “No one should lie on his back with one foot placed on top of the other.”

*Mohammed seems to have been exceptionally modest about his body.*

B7,72,807 One day a man peeped into Mohammed’s house and saw him scratching his head with a comb. Noticing the man Mohammed said, “If I had realized that you were peeking at me I would have stuck this comb in your eye. The reason that people must ask permission is to keep them from seeing things that they shouldn’t.”

## MOHAMMED’S SLAVES

B3,34,351 A man committed himself to freeing one of his slaves upon his death, but later needed money. Mohammed took the slave and asked, “Does anyone want to buy this slave from me?” Nu Aim received the slave from Mohammed after giving the Prophet a certain price.

B7,65,344 While at the house of his slave tailor, Mohammed ate a gourd dish that he seemed to enjoy. Ever since then, I [Anas] have enjoyed eating gourd.

B9,91,368 Umar sought Mohammed and found him in an upstairs room with a black slave standing guard at the top of the stairs. Umar said to the slave, “Inform Mohammed that Umar is here and seeks permission to see him.” The slave then admitted me to the room.

## WAR

*Mohammed was devoted to violence in the cause of Islam.*

B9,90,332 Abu Huraira overheard Mohammed say, “By Allah, if I had a way of transporting all the men who wished to fight in jihad, I would not miss any opportunity to fight the Kafir. It would be a pleasure to be martyred for Allah, be resurrected, and martyred again and again.”

*Humor in jihad.*

M031,5932 Amir B. Sa'd reported, on the authority of his father, that Allah's Apostle gathered his parents for him on the Day of Uhud when a polytheist had set fire to (i.e. attacked fiercely) the Muslims. Thereupon Allah's Apostle said to him: "(Sa'd), shoot an arrow, (Sa'd), may my mother and father be taken as ransom for you." I drew an arrow and I shot a featherless arrow at the Meccan polytheist, aiming his side. He fell down and his private parts were exposed. Allah's Messenger laughed so that I saw his front teeth.

## CRUELTY

B2,24,577 Some people came to Medina, but the climate made them sick, so Mohammed gave them permission to stay among the camels that had been collected for taxes. He told them to drink the camel's urine and milk, as that would cure their illness. However, the people instead murdered the shepherd and stole the camels. Mohammed sent men after them and they were quickly captured. Mohammed ordered that their hands and feet be cut off, and their eyes pierced with hot pokers. They were left to die of thirst on the rocks of Harra.

## HIS BODILY FUNCTIONS

*One of many hadiths about Mohammed and elimination.*

B1,9,479 Whenever Mohammed went to the toilet, another boy and I would follow with a stick, a staff and a container of water. When he finished, we would give him the water.

*This is the Sunna of Mohammed*

# COMMENTS

## CHAPTER 18

*9:63 Do they not know that whoever opposes Allah and His Messenger will abide in the Fire of Hell, where they will remain forever? This is the great shame.*

### DUALITY

The Hadith divides humanity into two groups, Muslims and Kafirs. The Koran and the Sira present this same world view.

Each group has a different set of ethics so we call this dual ethics. There is one set that tells how to treat the Muslims and a second that describes how to treat the Kafir.

Non-Muslims can be treated kindly or they can be treated as the enemy of Allah. Their goods can be taken; they can be insulted, enslaved, and murdered if such treatment will advance Islam.

### POLITICAL DUALITY

The Hadith contain the Sunna of jihad, slavery, dhimmis, and apostates. These are political issues with an ethical foundation. The suffering caused by jihad, slavery, dhimmis, and the killing of apostates is all based upon dualistic Islamic ethics. It is an absolute ethical inequality that is divine, sanctioned by the only god of the universe, Allah. This inequality between Muslim and Kafir is permanent and universal. It cannot be changed, reformed, or modified.

However, in either set of ethics, one point remains. A Kafir is never the equal of a Muslim. Islam may respect a Kafir but can never accept him as equal.

The Koran, Hadith, and Sira are emphatic. The the only politics that can exist are the politics of Islam. Non-Muslims' politics are subject to the violence of jihad if the Kafirs do not submit. All governments must rule by Islamic Sharia law to achieve the peace of Islam.

### UNITARY AND DUAL ETHICS

Unitary ethics are based upon the principle that at some fundamental level, all people are the same humanity, although they are not necessarily equal, as all people do not have the same abilities. This "sameness" means that we all want to be treated fairly. The perfect unitary ethical statement is:

“Treat others as you wish to be treated.” “Others” here means all of humanity is to be treated the same. This is an ideal perhaps, but failure to act upon it does not detract from its principle.

### *Dualistic Ethics*

Give good advice to every Muslim.

A Muslim is a brother to every Muslim.

A Muslim is one who avoids harming any Muslim with his tongue or hands.

### *Unitary Ethics*

Give good advice to every person.

A person is a brother to every person.

A person avoids harming any person with his tongue or hands.

The dual ethics of Islam are not as simple as having separate ethics for the Kafir. What makes Political Islam so effective is that it has two stages of ethics for the Kafir, the ethics of the Meccan Koran and the ethics of the Medinan Koran. Islam can treat the Kafir well but as an inferior (Mecca) or treat him as an enemy of Allah (Medina). Both actions are sanctioned as sacred in the Koran. Muslims usually refer to the Meccan ethics when speaking to Kafirs. Apologists declare that the Meccan ethical system is the “real” Islam and that reform is possible.

Consider the comparisons between unitary and dualistic ethics in the table on the next page. These differences are not compatible. There is no middle ground or compromise between dualism and unitary ethics. They are mutually exclusive. Co-existence is temporary.

## THE REAL ISLAM

What is the real Islam? Radical Islam? Fundamentalist Islam? Moderate Islam? Meccan Islam? Medinan Islam? There is only Islam. Islam is like a rainbow, a full-spectrum political system. Those who argue that the real Islam is moderate or that the real Islam is fundamentalist are like those who would say that a rainbow is red or green. A rainbow is not red, not green. No, a rainbow is all the colors. Islam is not peaceful, not violent. Islam is peaceful and violent. You can no more remove the aggression than you can remove the red from the rainbow. The only true view is to take the whole of Islam. The Islamic political doctrine always has two choices, and both choices are true. Political Islam is profoundly dualistic.

---



THE MECCAN IDEALS OF DUALISM	THE MEDINAN IDEALS OF DUALISM	THE IDEALS OF UNITARY ETHICS
Islam is the religion of peace. A real Muslim is never violent.	Violence and threats are used against Kafirs. The violence is caused by the Kafirs failure to submit to Islam.	Peace is the desired state between groups.
Artists and intellectuals are pressured.	Artists and intellectuals that offend Islam are threatened and/or killed. Art and ideas must submit to Islam.	Artists and intellectuals are free to speak.
Islam is the “brother” religion of the Jews and Christians.	All religions must submit to Islam.	All religions are tolerated.
Demands are made on the host culture to accommodate Islam.	Differences are settled by threats and force (any compromise is temporary).	Differences are settled by negotiation and compromise.
Local laws are obeyed outside the Islamic community.	Islamic law (Sharia) is supreme. Kafirs are second class citizens.	All people are equal before the law.
Islam’s poverty is caused by the Kafirs.	Islam takes wealth as its due.	Wealth is generated and created.

This dualism cannot be removed. Dualism is at the core of the Trilogy. The Trilogy is perfect, permanent, and universal. It cannot be changed. A Muslim may reform but Islam cannot.

FOR MORE INFORMATION

Visit:

[www.politicalislam.com](http://www.politicalislam.com)



**BILL WARNER PHD**

**A TWO-HOUR**  
**KORAN**

**CSPI**

**LEVEL 1**

A TASTE OF ISLAM SERIES

# A TWO-HOUR KORAN

BILL WARNER, EDITOR

A TASTE OF ISLAM SERIES

A TWO-HOUR KORAN

BILL WARNER, EDITOR

COPYRIGHT © 2010

ISBN13 978-1-936659-02-9

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

V 12.31.10

PUBLISHED BY CSPI  
WWW.CSPIPUBLISHING.COM  
PRINTED IN THE USA



# OVERVIEW

## CHAPTER 1

The Koran must be the world's most famous book that very few have read and even fewer have understood. There is no time sequence in the Koran, since the chapters are laid out in order of their length, not in time. The Koran has been randomized, and the plot has been destroyed. That is found in the Koran at the bookstore.

Now in less time than it takes to watch a professional sports game, you can understand the nature of the Koran. Hence, the name: *A Two-Hour Koran*. This book is not a complete Koran, but after reading it, you will be able to pick up a “real” Koran at the bookstore and understand it.

### KAFIR

The first step in learning about Islam is to know the right definition of words. The language of Islam is dualistic. There is a division of humanity into believer and *kafir* (Kafir). Humanity is divided into those who believe Mohammed is the prophet of Allah, and those who do not.

Kafir is the actual word the Koran uses for non-Muslims. It is usually translated as unbeliever, but that translation is wrong. The word unbeliever is neutral. As you will see, the attitude of the Koran towards unbelievers is very negative. The Koran defines the Kafir in the following ways:

The Kafir is hated—

40:35 *They [Kafirs] who dispute the signs [Koran verses] of Allah without authority having reached them are greatly hated by Allah and the believers. So Allah seals up every arrogant, disdainful heart.*

A Kafir can be beheaded—

47:4 *When you encounter the Kafirs on the battlefield, cut off their heads until you have thoroughly defeated them and then take the prisoners and tie them up firmly.*

A Kafir can be plotted against—

86:15 *They plot and scheme against you [Mohammed], and I plot and scheme against them. Therefore, deal calmly with the Kafirs and leave*

*them alone for a while.*

A Kafir can be terrorized—

*8:12 Then your Lord spoke to His angels and said, “I will be with you. Give strength to the believers. I will send terror into the Kafirs’ hearts, cut off their heads and even the tips of their fingers!”*

A Kafir can be made war on and humiliated—

*9:29 Make war on those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] but do not believe in Allah or in the Last Day. They do not forbid what Allah and His Messenger have forbidden. The Christians and Jews do not follow the religion of truth until they submit and pay the poll tax [jizya], and they are humiliated.*

A Muslim is not the friend of a Kafir—

*3:28 Believers should not take Kafirs as friends in preference to other believers. Those who do this will have none of Allah’s protection and will only have themselves as guards. Allah warns you to fear Him for all will return to Him.*

A Kafir is cursed—

*33:60 They [Kafirs] will be cursed, and wherever they are found, they will be seized and murdered. It was Allah’s same practice with those who came before them, and you will find no change in Allah’s ways.*

In Islam, Christians and Jews are infidels and “People of the Book”; Hindus are polytheists and pagans. The terms infidel, People of the Book, pagan and polytheist are religious words. Only the word “Kafir” shows the common political treatment of the Christian, Jew, Hindu, Buddhist, animist, atheist and humanist. What is done to a pagan can be done to a Christian, atheist or any other Kafir.

The word Kafir will be used in this book instead of “unbeliever”, “non-Muslim” or “disbeliever”. Unbeliever or non-Muslim are neutral terms, but Kafir is not a neutral word. Instead, it defines a subhuman, so it is bigoted and biased.

## THE THREE VIEWS OF ISLAM

There are three points of view in dealing with Islam. The point of view depends upon what you believe about Mohammed. If you believe Mohammed is the prophet of Allah, then you are a believer. If you don’t

believe this, you are a *Kafir*. The third viewpoint is that of an apologist for Islam.

Apologists do not believe that Mohammed was a prophet, but they never say anything that would displease a Muslim. They never offend Islam and condemn any analysis that is critical of Islam as being biased.

Let us give an example of the three points of view.

In Medina, Mohammed sat all day long beside his 12-year-old wife while they watched as the heads of 800 Jews were removed by sword.<sup>[1]</sup> Their heads were cut off because they had said that Mohammed was not the prophet of Allah. Muslims view these deaths as necessary because denying Mohammed's prophet-hood was an offense against Islam. Beheading is the accepted method of punishment for this and is sanctioned by Allah.

<sup>[1]</sup> *The Life of Muhammad*, A. Guillaume, Oxford University Press, 1982, pg. 464.

Kafirs look at this event as proof of the jihadic violence of Islam and as an evil act. They call it ethnic cleansing.

Apologists say that this was a historic event, that all cultures have violence in their past, and that no judgment should be passed.

According to the different points of view, killing the 800 Jews was either evil, a perfect godly act or only another historical event, take your pick.

This book is written from the Kafir point of view and is therefore, Kafir-centric. Everything in this book views Islam from how it affects Kafirs, non-Muslims. This also means that the religion is of little importance. Only a Muslim cares about the religion of Islam, but all Kafirs are affected by Islam's political views.

Notice that there is no right and wrong here, merely different points of view that cannot be reconciled. There is no possible resolution between the view of the Kafir and the Muslim. The apologist tries to bring about a bridge building compromise, but it is not logically possible.

## WHAT IS THE KORAN?

According to Islam, the Koran contains the exact words of the only god of the universe. It is complete, perfect, eternal and universal. It is also unintelligible.

About 20 years after Mohammed's death, Uthman, the caliph, produced the current Koran and then took and burned all of the sources.



The Koran that Uthman produced was not the historical Koran of Mohammed. In the historical Koran each chapter followed the other as Mohammed's life unfolded. The historical Koran was easy to understand. If that original historical form is reproduced, then the resulting Koran can be understood by anyone.

## THE DIFFICULTY OF KNOWING THE KORAN

1. It is arranged from the longest chapter to the shortest chapter. This destroyed the story of the Koran.
2. Each chapter has a bewildering array of topics.
3. It is very repetitive. The story of Moses is told 39 times.
4. There is no context to many verses. This is very confusing.
5. It is contradictory.

The sum total is that the Koran is confusing, contradictory, makes no sense, and is strange, violent, threatening and unpleasant. It's difficult to understand and daunting to read.

## SUMMARY

The Koran can be made understandable by using:

- Chronology—putting the verses in the original historical order
- Categorizing—the method of grouping verses around the same subject.
- Context—using Mohammed's life to explain the circumstances and environment of the text.

The life of Mohammed is known from an official biography, called the Sira, written by Ibn Ishaq, *Sirat Rasul Allah*. The Sira has been integrated into the Koran text. This restores the original historical Koran of Mohammed's day. After you read this Koran, you will be able to pick up a "real" Koran, and it will be easily understood.

## REFERENCE NUMBERS

The information in this book can be traced back to the source by use of the reference numbers:

1234 is a reference to Ibn Ishaq's *Sirat Rasul Allah*, translated by A. Guillaume as *The Life of Muhammad*. This is a reference to margin note 234.

12:45 is Koran chapter (sura) 12, verse 45.

# THE KORAN OF MECCA

# BEGINNING TEACHINGS

## CHAPTER 2

*4:13 These are the limits set up by Allah. Those who obey Allah and His Messenger will be led into the Gardens watered by flowing rivers to live forever. This is the ultimate reward!*

### COMMENT

When Mohammed's life is integrated into the Koran, it gives context and meaning to the verses. The Koran says 91 times that Muslims are to imitate Mohammed. This is the reason that every chapter in this Koran starts with a verse reminding the world that the Koran has no meaning without Mohammed.

### THE PROPHET

1152 At the age of forty Mohammed began to have visions and hear voices. He said that the angel Gabriel came to him with a brocade with writing on it and commanded him to read. The angel said:

*96:1 Recite: In the name of your Lord, Who created man from clots of blood.*

*96:3 Recite: Your Lord is the most generous, Who taught the use of the pen and taught man what he did not know.*

Mohammed awoke from his sleep. He hated the insane and his thoughts were that he was insane. He thought to kill himself by jumping off a cliff. Half way up the hill, he heard, "Mohammed, You are the apostle of Allah and I am Gabriel." Then Mohammed began to receive what he called revelations such as:

*97:1 Surely, We have revealed it [the Koran] on the night of power. And who will explain to you what the night of power is? The night of power is better than a thousand months. On that night the angels and the spirit descended with their Lord's permission, to do their every duty and all is peace until the break of day.*

*55:1 Merciful Allah has taught the Koran, has created man, and has taught him to speak. The sun and the moon follow their exact courses, and the plants and the trees bow down in adoration. He has uplifted the*

*sky and set the balance of justice so that you may not exceed the right measure. Measure fairly, and do not cheat the balance.*

*55:10 He has prepared the earth for his creatures. On it there are fruits and palms with sheathed clusters and husked grains and fragrant plants. Which of your Lord's blessings would you deny?*

*55:14 He has created man from clay like a potter, and He created the jinn<sup>[1]</sup> from smokeless fire. Which of your Lord's blessings would you deny?*

<sup>[1]</sup>. Islam has an entire world of spirits called jinns (genies). They can influence humans for good or bad.

*55:17 He is the Lord of the east. He is the Lord of the west. Which of your Lord's blessings would you deny?*

## THE FIRST CONVERT

1156 Mohammed's wife, Khadija, was the first convert. From the first she had encouraged him, believed him. She did not think him to be deceived or crazy.

Soon he stopped hearing voices or seeing visions and became depressed and felt abandoned. Then his visions started again and said:

*93:1 By the brightness of the noonday sun and by the night at its darkest, your Lord has not forgotten you, and He does not hate you.*

*93:4 Certainly the future will be better than the past, and in the end your Lord will be generous to you, and you will be satisfied. Did He not find you living like an orphan and give you a home? Did He not find you lost and give you guidance? Did He not find you poor, and did He not give you enough?*

Mohammed began to tell others who were close to him of words in his visions.

*1:1 In the Name of Allah, the Compassionate, the Merciful.*

*1:2 Praise be to Allah, Lord of the worlds. The Compassionate, the Merciful. King of the Judgment Day.*

*1:5 Only You do we worship, and to You alone do we ask for help. Keep us on the straight and narrow path. The path of those that You favor; not the path of those who anger You [the Jews] nor the path of those who go astray [the Christians].*

107:1 *What do you think of him who treats Our religion as a lie, who trusts that others will raise the orphan, and does not urge others to feed the poor? Woe to those who pray, but whose prayers are careless and to those who make a show of devotion, but refuse to help the needy.*

70:22 *Not the devout, who pray constantly and whose wealth has a fixed portion set aside for beggars and the destitute, and those who believe in the Judgment Day, and those who fear their Lord's punishment—because no one is safe from their Lord's punishment—and who control their sexual desires (except with their wives or slave-girls, with them there is no blame; but whoever indulges their lust beyond this are transgressors), and who keep their trusts and promises, and who tell the truth, and who are attentive to their prayers. These will live with honors in Gardens.*

92:5 *He who gives alms and fears Allah and accepts the good, to him We will make the path to happiness easy. But he who is greedy and does not think he needs Allah's help and calls the good a lie, to him We will make the path to misery easy. And what good will his wealth do him when he dies?*

92:12 *Certainly it is up to Us to guide man and certainly the future and the past belong to Us. Therefore I warn you of the blazing Fire. Only the most wretched will be thrown into it, those who call the truth a lie and turn their backs.*

92:17 *Those who fear Allah will escape it and so will those who give away their wealth so that they may be purified; and who give freely without hope of reward, except seeking the pleasure of his Lord, the most high, certainly in the end they will be content.*

The Koran of Mecca records the swearing of many oaths sworn.

95:1 *I swear by the fig and the olive, by Mount Sinai, and by this inviolate land [Mecca]! We have created man in a noble image then reduced him to the lowest of the low, except those who believe and do the right things, because their reward will never fail.*

95:7 *Then, who can convince you that the judgment is a lie? Is Allah not the best of judges?*

86:1 *By the heaven and the morning star! Who will teach you what the morning star is? It is the star of piercing brightness. A guardian is set*

*over every soul.*

*86:11 I swear by the heaven that completes its cycle and by the earth that bursts with new growth, that this [the Koran] is the final word, and it is not an amusement.*

## PRAYER

Mohammed, his wife and nephew, Ali, started praying at the Kabah with their new rituals of ablutions and prayer with prostrations. A visitor asked about this new ritual and was told that it was a new religion.

*73:1 You [Mohammed] wrapped up in your robe, awake half the night, more or less, to pray and recite the Koran in a measured rhythm, because We will send down to you a weighty message. Certainly nightfall is a time when impressions are stronger and speech is more certain. Obviously, the day is filled with constant work.*

*73:8 Remember the name of your Lord, and devote yourself to Him with complete devotion. Lord of the east and the west; there is no god except Allah. Take Him for your protector.*

## MECCA

Mohammed lived in Mecca, which had been a religious center for many generations. It had a stone building that was roughly shaped like a cube and was called a Kabah. One of the many gods in Mecca was Allah, a moon god. The native religions did not have any formal structure to the many deities, but Allah was a high god. Allah was the primary god of Mohammed's tribe, the Quraysh tribe.

Mohammed declared himself as a prophet in the tradition of the Jews. The Koran retells the stories of some of the early Jewish prophets, but with a twist, or differing details.

## Abraham

*51:24 Have you heard the story of Abraham's honored guests? They went to him and said, "Peace!" And he replied, "Peace, strangers." And he went among his household and brought out a fatted calf, and he set it before them and said, "Do you want to eat?" They did not, and he became afraid of them. They said to him, "Do not be afraid," and gave him the news that he was going to father a wise son. Abraham's wife*

*came forward with a cry, striking her face, and said, "But I am old and barren!"*

*51:30 They said, "Your Lord says it is true, and he is wise and knowing."*

*51:31 Abraham said, "What errand are you on, messengers?" They replied, "We are sent to a wicked people, to shower them with stones of clay, sent by your Lord for their excesses."*

*51:35 We went to evacuate the believers in the city, but We only found one Muslim family, and We left signs warning those who fear the painful punishment. Moses was another sign. We sent him to Pharaoh with manifest authority. But Pharaoh was confident of his might and turned his back and said, "You are a magician, or insane." So We seized him and his army and cast them into the sea, and he had only himself to blame.*

## Moses

*79:15 Have you heard the story of Moses? How his Lord called to him in the sacred valley of Tuwa, saying, "Go to Pharaoh. He has rebelled, and say, 'Do you want to be purified?' Then I will guide you to your Lord so that you may fear Him."*

*79:20 And Moses showed Pharaoh a great miracle. But Pharaoh denied it and disobeyed. Furthermore, he turned his back and rebelled against Allah. He gathered an army and made a proclamation, saying, "I am your lord, the most high." So Allah punished him and made an example of him in this life and the hereafter. Surely this is a lesson for those who fear Allah.*

## The Koran adapts the Christian Day of Judgment.

*88:1 Have you heard the news of the overwhelming event?*

*88:2 Some faces will be downcast that day, troubled and weary, burnt at the scorching Fire, forced to drink from a fiercely boiling fountain, with only bitter thorns for food, which neither nourishes nor satisfies hunger.*

*88:8 Other faces that day will be joyous, and in a lofty Garden, very pleased with their past efforts. No vain talk will be heard there. There will be gushing fountains. There will be raised couches, and goblets placed nearby, and cushions arranged, and carpets spread out.*

*88:17 Will they consider the camels and how they were made? Or consider how the sky was upraised, and how the mountains are rooted,*



*and how the earth is spread?*

*88:21 Warn them, because you [Mohammed] are merely a warner. You have no authority over them, but whoever turns back and disbelieves, Allah will punish them terribly.*

*88:25 Truly they will return to Us. Then it will be time for Us to settle their accounts.*

The Koran's most graphical language is found in Paradise and Hell.

*56:10 The people who were foremost on earth [the first to follow [Mohammed]], they will be foremost in the hereafter. A large number of those who lived before are the people who will be brought close to Allah, in Gardens of delight. A few of those who lived later [after Islam was well established] will be on decorated couches, reclining on them face to face. They will be waited on by immortal young boys with goblets and ewers and a cup of pure wine that gives no headache nor muddles the mind, and with fruits that are most pleasing, and with the flesh of birds that they desire. In compensation for their past good deeds, they will have houris [heavenly companions of pleasure] with big, dark eyes like pearls peeking from their shells. They will not hear any vain or sinful talk, only the cry, "Peace! Peace!"*

*56:27 The people of the right-hand— Oh! How happy the people of the right-hand will be resting on raised couches amid thornless sidrahs [plum trees] and talh trees [banana trees], thick with fruit, and in extended shade and constantly flowing waters, and abundant fruits, neither forbidden nor out of reach. And We have specially made for them houris, companions, chaste and pure virgins, lovers and friends of equal age with them for the people of the right hand, a large number of the people of old, and a large number of the people of the latter generations.*

*56:41 The people of the left-hand— Oh, how wretched the people of the left-hand will be amid scorching winds and scalding water, and in the shade of black smoke, neither cool nor refreshing. Formerly they were blessed with worldly pleasures, yet they persisted in terrible sin and used to say, "What will be resurrected after we have died and crumbled to bone and dust? What about our fathers, the men of old?"*

*56:49 Say: Yes, the former and the latter. They will all be gathered at the appointed hour.*

56:51 *Then those who denied [Mohammed was a prophet] and erred will certainly eat from the Ez-zakkoum tree [a tree of Hell], and they will gorge themselves with it. Then they will drink scalding water and will drink like a thirsty camel. This will be their feast on the Judgment Day!*

18:29 *Say: The truth is from your Lord. Let those who will, believe. Let those who will, be Kafirs. We have prepared a Fire for the Kafirs that is like the walls and roof of a tent. It will enclose them. If they cry for relief, they will be showered with water that is like molten brass which scalds their faces. What a dreadful drink and resting place!*

40:70 *Those who reject the Book and the revelations with which We have sent our messengers will soon know the truth. When the yokes and the chains are on their necks, they will be dragged into the boiling waters then they will be thrust into the Fire and burned. Then it will be said to them, "Where are the ones whom you made partners with Allah?"*

1161 Any person who rejected the revelations of Mohammed would be eternally punished in Hell. The culture of religious tolerance in Mecca now had a new religion which preached the end of tolerance. Only Islam was acceptable.

1166 Since the word was out, Mohammed began to openly preach his new doctrine. He had been private for three years before he went public.

The Arabs had always believed in jinns, invisible beings created from fire. Now they appeared in the Koran.

114:1 *Say: I seek protection with the Lord of men, the king of men, the judge of men, and from the mischief of gossips, who whisper into the hearts of men tales against the jinn and men.*

51:56 *I created jinn and man only to worship me. I need no livelihood from them, and I do not need them to feed me. Truly, Allah is the sole sustainer, the possessor of power, and the unmovable!*

The other deities in Mecca were attacked.

53:19 *Do you see Al-Lat and Al-Ozza, and Manat [Arabic deities] the third idol? What? Do you have male children and Allah female children [Arabs called angels the daughters of Allah]? That is an unfair division!*

53:23 *These are mere names. You and your fathers gave them these names. Allah has not acknowledged them. They follow only their own*

*conceits and desires, even though their Lord has already given them guidance.*

Mohammed's task in Mecca was difficult.

*52:29 Therefore, continue to warn men. By the grace of your Lord, you are neither insane, nor a soothsayer.*

*52:30 Will people say, "He is a poet! Let us wait until his fortunes turn."? Say: "Wait," because truthfully, I will wait with you.*

*52:32 Is it their dreams that cause them to do this? Or is it because they are a perverse people? Will they say, "He has written it [the Koran] himself?" No! It is because they did not believe. If that is true, let them write a book like it.*

The Meccans said that there was no Day of Doom. The Koran:

*83:1 What! Do they believe that they will not be resurrected on the great day when all men will stand before the Lord of the worlds? Yes! The register [a record of actions] of the wicked is in Sidjīn [a place in Hell where the sinners' records are kept]. And who will make you understand what Sidjīn is? It is a complete record.*

*83:10 Woe on that day to those who deny Our signs, who regard the Judgment Day as a lie! No one regards it as a lie except the transgressor or the criminal, who, when Our signs are recited to him, says, "Old wives tales!" No! Their habits have become like rust on their hearts. Yes, they will be veiled from their Lord's light that day. Then they will be burned in Hell. They will be told, "This is what you called a lie."*

*83:18 No! But the register of the righteous is in Illiyoun [a place in Paradise where the actions of the righteous are recorded]. And who will make you understand what Illiyoun is? It is a complete record, attested to by the angels nearest Allah.*

*83:22 Surely, the righteous will live among delights! Seated on bridal couches they will gaze around. You will see the delight in their faces. Fine wines, sealed with musk, will be given them to drink. For those who have aspirations, aspire for wine mixed with the waters of Tasnim, a fountain where those close to Allah drink.*

*83:29 Sinners used to jeer at the believers and wink at one another when one passed by, and they jested as they returned to their own people. When they see believers, they say, "Those people have gone astray." And yet they were not sent to be the guardians of those people.*

83:34 *On that day the faithful will mock the Kafirs, while they sit on bridal couches and watch them. Should not the Kafirs be paid back for what they did?*

1167 There was open hostility in the town. Quarrels increased, arguments got very heated. Complete disharmony dominated the town. The tribe started to abuse the recently converted Muslims.

1171 Many of the rich and powerful, who resisted Mohammed, earned their place in the Koran.

96:9 *What do you think of a man [Abu Jahl] who holds back a servant of Allah [Mohammed] when he prays? Do you think that he is on the right path, or practices piety? Do you think that he treats the truth as a lie and turns his back? Does he not know that Allah sees everything?*

96:15 *No! Certainly if he does not stop, We will grab him by the forelock [cutting off or holding by the forelock was a shame in Arabic culture], the lying, sinful forelock! Let him call his comrades [the other Meccans]. We will call the guards of Hell. No, do not obey him, rather, adore and get closer to Allah.*

111:1 *Let the hands of Abu Lahab [Mohammed's uncle and an opponent] die and let him die! His wealth and attainments will not help him. He will be burned in Hell, and his wife will carry the firewood, with a palm fiber rope around her neck.*

1178 In what would be very fortuitous for Mohammed, the Arabs of Medina were attracted to Mohammed's message. Since half of their town were Jews, the Arabs of Medina were used to the talk of only one god.

# PUBLIC TEACHING

## CHAPTER 3

*3:32 Say: Obey Allah and His messenger, but if they reject it, then truly, Allah does not love those who reject the faith.*

The arguments continued. The Koran is filled with condemnation of the Meccans who argued with Mohammed.

*25:32 Those who disbelieve say, "Why was the Koran not revealed to him all at once?" It was revealed one part at a time so that We might strengthen your heart with it and so that We might rehearse it with you gradually, in slow, well-arranged stages.*

*25:33 They will not come to you with any difficult questions for which We have not provided you the true and best answers. Those who will be gathered together face down in Hell will have the worst place and will be the farthest away from the right path.*

*18:56 We do not send messengers except as bearers of glad tidings and to give warnings. Yet the Kafirs make false contentions so that they may refute the truth. They mock Our signs just like they do Our warnings. Who is more unjust than he who is reminded of His Lord's signs but turns away from them and forgets what His hands have done? Truly We have placed veils over their hearts so that they do not understand, and deafness over their ears. Even if you give them guidance, they will not follow.*

The Meccans called Mohammed crazy and mocked him.

*37:12 Truly you [Mohammed] are amazed when they mock. When they [the Meccans] are warned, they pay no attention. When they see a sign, they begin to mock and say, "This is obviously magic. What? Will we be resurrected after we are nothing but dust and bones? And what about our ancestors?"*

*37:34 Truly, that is how We deal with the guilty, because when they were told that there is no god but Allah, they swelled with pride and said, "Should we abandon our gods for a crazy poet?"*

*37:37 No! He [Mohammed] comes truthfully and confirms the prophets of old. You will surely taste the painful punishment, and you will be*

*punished for what you have done, all except the sincere servants of Allah! They will have a fixed banquet of fruits; and they will be honored in the Garden of delight, facing one another on couches. A cup filled from a gushing spring will be passed among them, crystal clear and delicious to those who drink. It causes neither pain nor intoxication. And with them are companions [houris] with large eyes and modest glances, fair like a sheltered egg. They will ask one another questions. One of them will say, "I had a close friend who said, 'Are you one of those who accept the truth? What? When we have died, and become dust and bones, will we really be judged?'"*

*37:54 He will say to those around him, "Will you look?" Looking down, he saw his friend in the depths of Hell. And he will say to him, "By Allah, you almost destroyed me. Except for my Lord's favor, I surely would have been one of those who came with you into torment."*

1183 Mohammed continued to preach the glory of Allah and condemn the Quraysh religion. He told them their way of life was wrong, their ancestors would burn in Hell, he cursed their gods, he despised their religion and divided the community, setting one tribesman against the others. The Quraysh felt that this was all past bearing. Tolerance had always been their way.

*21:107 We have sent you only to be a mercy for all people. Say: It has been revealed to me that Allah is the only god. Will you submit to Him? If they turn their backs, then say, "I have truthfully warned you alike. I do not know if Judgment Day will come sooner or later. Allah knows what is said openly and what you hide. I only know that you will be tried and that you may enjoy yourself for awhile." Say: My Lord judges with truth. Our Lord is the beneficent Allah Whose help is sought against lies you ascribe to Him.*

He continued to speak of Allah and the Koran. The Koran refers to itself many times and offers proofs of its truth.

*67:16 Are you confident that Allah in heaven will not open the earth and swallow you in an earthquake? Are you sure that Allah in heaven will not send a hurricane against you? You will understand My warning then! It is true that your ancestors rejected their prophets. Was not My wrath terrible?*

67:19 *Do they not see the birds above, spreading and folding their wings? Only merciful Allah could keep them aloft. He watches over everything.*

67:20 *Who could help you like an army except merciful Allah? The Kafirs are totally deluded. Who would provide for you if He withheld His provisions? Still, they continue to be proud and reject Him. Is the person groveling along on his face better than those who walk upright on a straight path?*

67:1 *Blessed is He whose hands hold the kingdom and has power over all things; Who created life and death to determine who conducts themselves best; and He is the mighty, the forgiving! He created and raised seven heavens, one above the other. You can not see one defect in merciful Allah's creation. Do you see a crack in the sky? Look again and again. Your vision will blur from looking, but you will find no defects.*

Here are other references in the Koran about the Koran:

Note: The first verse of most Koran chapters has words such as these two words—HA. MIM. No one knows their meaning or purpose.

44:1 *HA. MIM. By the book that makes everything clear!*

44:3 *We revealed it on a blessed night—because We are always warning man—on a night when every command is made clear by Our command. We are always sending Our messengers as a mercy from your Lord. He hears and knows everything.*

The Koran repeatedly says that Arabic is the true language of Allah.

20:112 *But those who believe and have done the right things will have no fear of wrong or loss. This is why We sent to you an Arabic Koran and explained in detail Our warnings so that they may fear Allah and heed them. Exalted above all is Allah, the King, the Truth! Do not hurry through its recital before its revelation is made complete to you. Instead say, "Lord, increase my knowledge."*

26:192 *This Book has come down from the Lord of the worlds. The faithful spirit [Gabriel] has come down with it upon your [Mohammed's] heart so that you may warn others in the clear Arabic language. Truly, it is foretold in the ancient scriptures. Is it not a sign that the learned men of the Israelites recognized? If We had revealed it to any of the non-Arabs and he had recited it to them, they would not have believed in it.*

Mohammed continued to make it clear that not believing the words he brought from Allah would lead to a violent and painful eternity.

*76:4 We have prepared chains, fetters, and a blazing fire for the Kafirs.*

*76:5 The righteous, however, will drink cups filled from a camphor fountain—the fountain Allah’s servants drink from—as it flows from place to place rewarding those who perform their vows and fear a day whose evil will spread far and wide. Even when they were hungry they gave their food to the poor, the orphan, and the prisoner. “We feed you for Allah’s sake. We are not looking for reward or thanks from you. We are afraid of suffering and punishment from Allah.”*

*76:11 But Allah saved them from the evil of that day and brought them happiness and joy. He rewarded their patience with Paradise and silk robes. Reclining on couches, none will suffer from extreme heat or cold. Trees will shade them, and fruit will dangle near by. Silver cups and crystal goblets will pass among them: silver cups, transparent as glass, their size reflecting the measure of one’s deeds. They will be given ginger-flavored wine from the fountain called Salsabil. They will be waited on by eternally young boys. When you look at them you would think they were scattered pearls. When you see it, you will see a vast kingdom of delights. They will wear richly brocaded green silk robes with silver bracelets on their arms, and they will quench their thirst with a pure drink given them by their Lord. This will be your reward. Your efforts will not go unnoticed.*

*76:23 We have sent the Koran to you in stages to be a revelation. Wait patiently for Allah’s command, and do not obey the wicked and the unbelieving. Celebrate your Lord’s name in the morning, in the evening, and at night. Adore him and praise him all night long.*

*76:27 But men love the fleeting present and ignore the dreadful day ahead. We have created them, and We built them strong. When We want to, We will make others to replace them. This is certainly a warning. Whoever chooses, will take a straight path to his Lord. But unless Allah wills it, because he is knowing and wise, you will not succeed. You will receive his mercy if he chooses to give it, but he has prepared a terrible punishment for the wicked.*

Mecca was a small town and there were meetings about what to do about Mohammed.



43:79 *Do they make plots against you? We also make plots. Do they think that We do not hear their secrets and their private conversations? We do, and Our messengers are there to record them.*

38:1 *SAD. I swear by the Koran, full of warning! Truly, the Kafirs must be filled with arrogant pride to oppose you. How many earlier generations did We destroy? In the end, they cried for mercy when there was no time to escape!*

38:4 *They are skeptical that a messenger would come to them from their own people, and the Kafirs say, "This man is a sorcerer and a liar! Has he combined all the gods into one Allah? That is an amazing thing!" And their chiefs [the leaders of the opposition to Mohammed in Mecca] went about and said, "Walk away. Remain faithful to your gods. This is a plot. We have never heard of such a thing in the earlier religion. This is nothing but an invented tale!"*

38:8 *They say, "Why, of all people, has the message been sent to him [Mohammed]?" Yes! They doubt My warnings because they have not tasted My vengeance. Do they possess the blessings of the mighty, your Lord's mercy? Is the kingdom of the heavens and the earth and everything in between in their hands? If so, let them climb up to the heavens if they can! Any allies [Mohammed's opponents] remaining here will be defeated.*

## MORE ARGUMENTS WITH THE MECCANS

1188, 189 One of the Quraysh said, "Well, if you speak for and represent the only true god, then perhaps his Allah could do something for them."

"This land is dry. Let his Allah send them a river next to Mecca."

"They were cramped being next to the mountains. Let his Allah open up some space by moving the mountains back."

"Our best members are dead. Let your Allah renew them to life and in particular send back the best leader of our tribe, Qusayy. We will ask Qusayy whether or not you speak truly."

1189 Mohammed said that he was sent as a messenger, not to do such work. They could either accept his message or reject it and be subject to the loss. Then one of them said, "If you won't use your Allah to help us, then let your Allah help you. Send an angel to confirm you and prove to us that we are wrong. As long as the angel was present, let him make Mohammed

wealthy, we will know that you represent Allah and we are wrong.” The Quraysh wanted miracles as a proof.

*15:4 We never destroy a city whose term was not preordained. No nation can delay or change its destiny. They say: “You [Mohammed] to whom the message was revealed, you are surely insane. If you were telling the truth, why did you not bring angels to us?”*

*15:8 We do not send the angels without good reason. If We did, the Kafirs would still not understand. Surely, We have sent down the message, and surely, We will guard it. Before your time, We sent apostles to the sects of the ancient peoples, but they mocked every messenger. Similarly, We allow doubt to enter the hearts of the sinners. They do not believe it, even though the example of the ancients has preceded them. Even if We opened a gate into heaven for them the entire time they ascended, they would say, “Our eyes are playing tricks on us. No, we are bewitched.”*

1189 Mohammed did not perform miracles, because such things were not what Allah had appointed him to do.

1189 They then said, “Did not your Lord know that we would ask you these questions? Then your Lord could have prepared you with better answers. And your Lord could have told you what to tell us if we don’t believe. We hear that you are getting this Koran from a man named Al Rahman from another town. We don’t believe in Al Rahman. Our conscience is clear. We must either destroy you or you must destroy us. Bring your angels and we will believe them.”

*26:204 What! Do they seek to hasten Our punishment? What do you think? If after giving them their fill for years and their punishment finally comes upon them, how will their pleasures help them? We have never destroyed a city that We did not warn first with a reminder. We did not treat them unjustly.*

*26:210 The devils were not sent down with the Koran. It does not suit them, and they do not have the power because they are banned from hearing it. Do not call upon any god but Allah, or you will be doomed. Rather, warn your close relatives,*

*26:215 And be kind to the believers who follow you. If they disobey you, say, “I will not be responsible for your actions.” Put your trust in Him who is mighty and merciful, Who sees you when you stand in prayer, and*

*your demeanor among the worshippers, because He hears and knows everything.*

1191 Mohammed would come to the Kabah and tell the Meccans what terrible punishments that Allah had delivered to the others in history who had not believed their prophets. That was now one of his constant themes. Allah destroyed others like you who did not listen to men like me.

*36:1 YA. SIN. I swear by the wise Koran that you are surely one of the messengers on a straight path, a revelation of the mighty, the merciful, sent to warn a people whose fathers were not warned, and consequently remain heedless.*

*36:7 Our sentence against them is just because they do not believe. We have bound their necks with chains that reach the chin, forcing their heads up. We have placed barriers in front, behind, and over them, so they can not see. It does not matter whether you warn them or not, because they will not believe. You can only warn those who follow the message and fear merciful Allah in private. Give them glad tidings of forgiveness and a generous reward. It is true We will give life to the dead and that We record what they will do and what they have done. We have recorded everything in Our perfect ledger.*

According to the Koran the ancient towns of Arabia were destroyed because they did not believe their prophet.

*26:141 The people of Thamud [the people of a ruined Nabatean city near Medina] rejected the messengers. Their brother Salih said to them, "Will you not fear Allah? I am a faithful messenger worthy of all trust. Fear Allah and obey me. I ask for no reward. My reward comes only from the Lord of the worlds. Will you be left safely to enjoy all you have among gardens and fountains and corn-fields and palm-trees, heavy with fruit, and—insolent as you are—your homes carved from the mountain stone? Fear Allah and obey me. Do not obey the bidding of the extravagant who make mischief in the land, and do not reform."*

*27:45 Long ago We sent to the Thamud their brother Salih saying, "Worship Allah." But they became two quarrelling factions. He said, "My people, why do you embrace evil, rather than good? Why do you not ask Allah's forgiveness so that you may receive mercy?"*

27:47 *They said, "We predict that you and your followers will bring us evil." He said, "The evil that you sense will befall you, will come from Allah. You are a people on trial."*

27:48 *In the city there were nine men from one family who made mischief in the land and would not reform. They said, "Swear to one another by Allah that we will attack Salih and his family at night, and we will tell his vengeance-seeking heirs that we did not see the murder of his family, and we will be telling the truth." They plotted and planned, but We also plotted, even though they did not realize. See how their plotting turned out. We destroyed them and their entire people. You may still see their ruined homes which were destroyed because they were wicked. Surely this is a sign for those who understand. We saved those who believed and acted righteously.*

The Koran of Mecca reworks the Jewish stories for Mohammed's benefit. Here are stories about David, a king of the Jews:

38:17 *Be patient with what they say, and remember Our servant David, a powerful man, who always looked repentantly to Allah. We made the mountains sing the praises of Allah in unison with him in the morning and the evening, and the birds gathered together; all joined him in praise of Allah. We made his kingdom strong and gave him wisdom and sound Judgment.*

38:21 *Have you heard the story of the two disputing men who climbed the wall of David's private chamber? David was frightened when they entered his room. They said, "Do not be afraid. We have a dispute, and one of us has certainly wronged the other. Judge where the truth lies between us, and do not be unjust, but guide us to the right way. My brother has ninety-nine ewes [female sheep], and I have only one. He pressured me and said, 'Let me have her.'"*

38:24 *David replied, "Certainly he has wronged you by insisting that you give him your ewe. It is true that many partners wrong one another the exception being those who believe and behave correctly. There are few of those." David realized that We had tried him. He asked forgiveness from his Lord, fell down bowing, and repented.*

38:25 *So We forgave him this sin; truly he is honored and well received by Us and has an excellent place in Paradise. It was said to him, "David, We have indeed made you a vice-regent on earth. Use truth and justice*

*when judging between men, and do not follow your passions because they may cause you to stray from Allah's path. Those who stray from Allah's path will meet a terrible punishment because they have forgotten the*

*Judgment Day.*

Noah is considered to be a prophet in Islam.

*71:1 We sent Noah to his people and said to him, "Warn your people before a terrible punishment befalls them." He said, "My people, I come to you as a plain-speaking warner. Serve and fear Allah and obey me. He will forgive you your sins and give you respite until the appointed time, because when Allah's appointed time has come, it can not be delayed. If only you knew this!"*

*71:5 He said, "Lord, I have cried to my people day and night; and my cries only increase their aversion. Whenever I cry to them so that you may forgive them, they cover their ears and cover themselves in their cloaks, and persist stubbornly in their error. Then I called loudly to them. Then I spoke plainly, and I spoke to them privately and I said, 'Beg your Lord for forgiveness because he is ready to forgive. He will open the sky and send down rain in abundance. He will increase your wealth and children and will give you gardens and rivers. What is the matter with you that you refuse to seek goodness from Allah's hand when it was Him who made you in diverse stages?'"*

*71:15 "Do you not see how Allah created the seven heavens and set them one above another? He placed the moon there and made it a light, and made the sun a lamp and placed it there, and Allah caused you to spring out of the earth like a plant. Later he will turn you back into the earth and bring you out again. Allah has spread the earth for you like a carpet so that you may walk there along spacious paths." Noah said, "Lord, they rebel against me and follow those whose wealth and children add only to their troubles."*

*71:22 And they devised a great plot. They said, "Do not forsake your gods; do not forsake Wadd, or Sowah, or Yaghuth nor Yahuk or Nesr [names of Semitic gods]." They have led many astray and have added only error to the ways of the wicked. Because of their sins, they were drowned and forced into the fire, and they discovered that Allah was their only shelter.*

71:26 *And Noah said, “Lord, do not leave one family of Kafirs alive on earth. Because if you do, then they will trick your servants and will only breed more sinners and Kafirs. Lord, forgive me and my parents and every believer that enters my house and all the male and female believers. Give nothing but destruction to the wicked.”*

Here are other Jewish references:

38:41 *Do you remember Our servant Job when he cried to his Lord, “Satan has afflicted me with distress and torment.” We said to him, “Stamp the ground with your foot. Here is a spring, a cool washing place, and water to drink.” And We gave him back his family and doubled their number as an example of Our mercy and as a reminder for men of understanding. We said to him, “Take up in your hand a branch and strike her with it, and do not break your oath.<sup>[1]</sup>” Truly, We found him to be full of patience and constant. He was an excellent servant, because he constantly turned toward Us in repentance.*

<sup>[1]</sup>. Job swore to beat his wife with one hundred blows. Later he softened, and, to fulfill his oath, he put one hundred small twigs in his hand and hit her once.

38:45 *And remember Our servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, men of power and vision. Surely We purified and chose them for a special purpose, proclaiming the message of the afterlife. They were, in Our eyes, truly some of the select and the good.*

38:48 *And remember Ishmael, Elisha, and Zul-Kifl [Ezekiel]: all of them belong among the chosen.*

38:49 *This is a reminder, and, surely, the righteous will have an excellent home in the afterlife, the Gardens of Eternity whose doors will always be open for them. They can recline and call at their leisure for abundant fruit and drink. They will have virgins of their own age, who glance modestly. This is what you are promised on the Judgment Day. This is Our gift to you. It will never fail.*

Abraham

37:83 *Truly, Abraham shared this faith when he brought a perfect heart to his Lord and he said to his father and to his people, “What are you worshiping? A lie! Do you want gods besides Allah? And what do you think about the Lord of the worlds?”*

37:88 *Then he looked up and gazed at the stars and said, “Truly, I am ill.” [Abraham’s peoples’ worship involved the stars] And they turned their backs on him and left. He turned to the images of their gods and said, “Do you not eat? What is wrong with you? Why do you not speak?” He began to attack them, striking them with his right hand.*

37:94 *As his tribesmen came running back to him, he said, “Do you worship what you have carved when Allah has created you and what you make?” They said, “Build a pyre for him, and throw him into the blazing fire.” They tried to plot against him, but We spoiled their plans. And Abraham said, “Truly, I will go to my Lord, and he will guide me. Oh Lord, give me a righteous son.” We gave him the good news of a gentle son.*

37:102 *When the son [Ishmael] grew tall enough to work, his father said to him, “Son, a dream tells me that I should sacrifice you. What do you think?” He said, “Father, do what you are commanded. If Allah wills, you will find me patient.”*

37:103 *After they had surrendered themselves to the will of Allah, he laid his son [Ishmael] face down. We cried out to him, “Abraham! You have satisfied the vision.” See how We reward the righteous. This was obviously a clear test. And We ransomed his son with an impressive victim [a ram], and We left this for him to be honored through posterity.*

37:109 *“Peace be on Abraham!” This is how We reward the good, because he was one of Our believing servants.*

37:112 *And We gave him the good news of the birth of Isaac—a righteous prophet—We bestowed Our blessing on him and Isaac. Among their descendents [the Jews] are some that do good and others that do harm to their souls.*

#### **A Moses story:**

20:9 *Have you heard the story of Moses? He saw a fire and said to his family, “Wait here. I see a fire. Maybe I can bring an ember from it, or find a guide there.”*

20:11 *When he came to it, a voice called out, “Moses! I am your Lord. Take off your shoes. You are in the sacred Tuwa valley. I have chosen you. Listen to what I say. I am Allah. There is no god but Me. Worship Me and observe prayer to celebrate My praise. The Hour [Judgment Day] is certainly coming. I plan to keep it a secret so that all souls may*

*be rewarded for their actions. Therefore do not let those who disbelieve and follow their lusts turn you away from the truth and cause your destruction.*

*20:17 What is that in your right hand, Moses?" He said, "It is my staff. I lean on it and beat the leaves down with it for my sheep, among other things." Allah said, "Throw it down, Moses!" He threw it down, and it turned into a slithering serpent. Allah said, "Grab it and do not be afraid. We will change it back to its former state. Now put your hand under your arm. It will come out white [with leprosy], but unhurt. Another sign so that We may show you Our greatest signs. Go to Pharaoh, because he has exceeded all limits."*

*20:25 Moses said, "My Lord, relieve my mind and make my task easy. Untie my tongue so they can understand what I say. Give me an assistant from my family—Aaron, my brother—add his strength to mine, and make him share my task. We will glorify you without pause, because you are always watching." He said, "Moses, your request is granted. We have shown you favor before. Our message to your mother inspired her saying: 'Put him into a chest and throw it in the river; the river will leave him on the bank where he will be found by an enemy to Me and to him.' But I cast my love down upon you so that you might be raised under my eye."*

*20:46 He said, "Do not be afraid, because I am with the both of you. I will listen and watch over you. Go to him and say, 'Surely we have been sent by your Lord. Let the Children of Israel go with us and do not torment them. We bring you a sign from your Lord, and peace to him who follows His guidance. It has been revealed to us that those who reject him and turn away will be punished.'"*

*20:49 And Pharaoh said, "Who is your Lord, Moses?"*

*20:50 Moses said, "Our Lord is the One who created everything and gave it all purpose."*

*20:77 We revealed to Moses, "Take away My servants and travel by night. Cleave a dry path through the sea for them. Do not be afraid of being overtaken and have no fear." Pharaoh and his army followed, but the sea overwhelmed them, because he misled his people by not guiding them.*



20:80 *Children of Israel! We saved you from your enemies, and We made a pact with you on the sacred side of the mountain and sent down to you manna and quails. We said, "Eat the good things that We have given you, but not to excess, or My wrath may fall on you, and whoever My wrath falls upon will surely perish. I will surely forgive him who turns to Allah and believes and does good deeds, and listens to guidance."*

1192 Since Mohammed and the Koran claimed Jewish roots, the Quraysh decided to send their story teller to the Jews in Medina and ask for help. The Rabbis said, "Ask him these three questions. If he knows the answer then he is a prophet, if not then he is a fake."

"What happened to the young men who disappeared in ancient days?"

"Ask him about the mighty traveler who reached the ends of the East and the West."

"Ask him, What is the spirit?"

1192 The Koran answered all the questions and statements of the Quraysh. With regards to the question about what happened to the young men in ancient times:

18:9 *Do you believe that the Sleepers of the Cave and the Inscription [an unknown reference] were among Our signs? When the youths [the Sleepers] took refuge in the cave, they said, "Lord, give us Your mercy and cause us to act rightly." We drew a veil over them depriving them of their senses for many years. Then We roused them so that We could know which would best determine the number of years they lived in the cave.*

[...]

18:25 *They remained in their cave for three hundred years, though some say three hundred and nine. Say: Allah knows exactly how long they stayed. He knows the secrets of the heavens and the earth. Man has no guardian besides Him. He does not allow any to share His power.*

As to the question about the mighty traveler (the Koran considers Alexander, the Great to be a prophet:

18:83 *They will ask you about Zul-Qarnain [Alexander, the Great]. Say: I will recite to you an account of him. We established his power in the land and gave him the means to achieve any of his aims. So he followed a path, until, when he reached the setting of the sun, he found it setting*

*in a muddy pond. Near by he found a people. We said, “Zul-Qarnain, you have the authority to either punish them or to show them kindness.”*  
18:87 *He said, “Whoever does wrong, we will certainly punish. Then he will be returned to his Lord, Who will punish him with a terrible punishment. But whoever believes and does good deeds shall be given a wonderful reward, and We will give them easy commands to obey.”*

The question—what is the spirit?

17:85 *They will ask you about the spirit [probably the angel Gabriel]. Say: The spirit is commanded by my Lord, and you are given only a little knowledge about it. If We wished, We could take Our revelations away from you. Then you would find no one to intercede with us on your behalf except as a mercy from your Lord. Surely His kindness to you is great.*

The Quraysh had questions about proof of Mohammed’s messages. Here is the Koran’s restatement of their questions about angels coming, creating rivers, creating wealth and any other miracle to prove Mohammed’s validity. The Koran’s response:

17:88 *Say: If men and jinn were assembled to produce something like this Koran, they could not produce its equal, even though they assisted each other. And certainly in this Koran We have explained to man every kind of argument, and yet most men refuse everything except disbelief. They [the Meccans] say, “We will not believe in you until you cause a spring to gush forth from the earth for us; or until you have a garden of date trees and grape vines, and cause rivers to gush abundantly in their midst; or when you cause the sky to fall down in pieces, as you claim will happen; or when you bring us face-to-face with Allah and the angels; or when you have a house of gold; or when you ascend into heaven; and even then we will not believe in your ascension until you bring down a book for us which we may read.” Say: Glory be to my Lord! Am I nothing except a man, a messenger?*

17:94 *What keeps men from believing when guidance has come to them but that they say, “Has Allah sent a man like us to be His messenger?” Say: If angels walked the earth, We would have sent down from heaven an angel as Our messenger. Say: Allah is a sufficient witness between you and me. He is well acquainted with His servants and He sees everything.*

17:97 *Whoever Allah guides, he is a follower of the right way, and whoever He causes to err, they shall not find any to assist them but Him. We will gather them together on the Resurrection Day, face down, blind, deaf, and dumb. Hell will be their home. Every time its flames die down, We will add fuel to the Fire. This is their reward because they did not believe Our signs and said, "When we are reduced to bones and dust, will we really be raised up as a new creation?"*

This is the Koran's answer to the Kafirs who said that the Koran was a lie based on old stories:

25:3 *Still they have worshiped other gods, besides Him, who have created nothing and were themselves created. They are powerless to work good or evil for themselves, nor can they control life or death or resurrection. But the Kafirs say, "This [the Koran] is nothing but a lie which he [Mohammed] has created with the assistance of others producing slander and injustice."*

25:5 *They say, "These are ancient fables that he has written down. They are dictated to him morning and night."*

25:6 *Say: The Koran was revealed by Him who knows the secrets of the heavens and the earth. He is truly forgiving and merciful.*

1204 When Mohammed called upon Meccans to submit to Islam, they said, "Our hearts are veiled; we don't understand what you say. There is something in our ears so we can't hear you."

The Koranic response:

17:45 *When you recite the Koran, We place an invisible barrier between you and the Kafirs. We place veils over their hearts and deafness in their ears so that they do not understand it, and when you mention only your Lord, Allah, in the Koran, they turn their backs and flee from the truth. We know absolutely what they listen to when they listen to you, and when they speak privately, the wicked say, "You follow a mad man!" See what they compare you to. But they have gone astray and cannot find the way.*

Mohammed's opponents are frequently quoted and paraphrased:

43:29 *I have allowed these men and their fathers to enjoy the pleasurable things of this life until the truth comes to them and a messenger makes things clear.*

43:30 *But when the truth came to them, they said: "This is trickery, and we reject it." And they say, "Why was this Koran not revealed to a great man of one of the two cities [Mecca and Taif]?"*

21:1 *Man's final reckoning draws ever closer to him, and yet he heedlessly continues to turn away. Every new warning that comes to him from his Lord is ridiculed. The wicked confer secretly and say, "Is he a man like you, or something more? Will you succumb to witchcraft with your eyes wide open?"*

21:4 *Say: My Lord knows what is spoken in the heavens and on earth. He is the hearer and the knower of all things.*

21:5 *They say, "No, This is nothing but jumbled dreams. He made it up. He is just a crazy poet! We want him to bring us a sign similar to those given to the prophets of the past!" Up to their time, despite Our warnings, not a single city that We destroyed believed. Will these people believe?*

Now verses in the Koran began to form the basis of the legal system (the Sharia) of Islam.

17:31 *Do not kill your children because you fear poverty. We will provide for them as well as for you. Surely, killing them is a terrible sin.*

17:32 *Have nothing to do with adultery. It is a shameful act and an evil path that leads to other evils.*

17:33 *Do not kill any one whom Allah has forbidden to be slain [a Muslim] unless it is for a just cause [apostasy, retribution for a killing]. Whoever is unjustly slain, We have given their heirs the authority to either forgive or demand retribution, but do not allow him to exceed limits in slaying because he will be helped by the law.*

# STRUGGLES

## CHAPTER 4

8:20 *Believers! Be obedient to Allah and His messenger, and do not turn your backs now that you know the truth. Do not be like the ones who say, "We hear," but do not obey.*

1217 Each of the clans of the Quraysh began to persecute those Muslims that they had any power over. The Meccans did not believe Mohammed.

34:43 *For when Our clear signs are recited to them, they say, "This is merely a man who would turn you away from your father's religion." They say, "This (Koran) is only a lie." And when they hear the truth, the Kafirs say, "This is nothing but clear sorcery." Yet We did not give them any books to study deeply, nor have We sent them a messenger with warnings. Those before them rejected the truth, but they have not given Us a tenth of what We have given to them. When they rejected My messengers, My vengeance was terrible.*

34:46 *Say: I advise you in one thing: that you stand up before Allah and reflect. There is no madness in your fellow citizen [Mohammed]. He is only your warner before a severe punishment.*

This verse allows a Muslim to avoid being persecuted about his religion. A Muslim may cover true beliefs about Islam to a Kafir.

3:28 *Say: Whether you hide what is in your hearts or make it widely known, Allah knows all. He knows all that is in the heavens and earth. Allah has control over all things.*

1235 A story teller boasted that he could tell better old stories and would tell them in competition with Mohammed. But the story teller was an Kafir and the Koran condemned him, as well as all Kafirs.

31:6 *There are men who engage in idle tales [A Persian story-teller in Mecca said that his stories were better than Mohammed's] without knowing, and they mislead others from the way of Allah and turn it to scorn. There will be a shameful punishment for them. When Our signs are revealed to him, he turns away in arrogance as if he had not heard them, as though there were deafness in his ears. Give him tidings of a terrible punishment. Those who will believe and do good works, will*

*enjoy the Gardens of Bliss, where they will abide forever. It is Allah's true promise, and He is mighty and wise.*

*31:10 He created the heavens without pillars that can be seen and put mountains firmly on the earth so that they would not move. He scattered over it animals of every sort. He sent down rain from the heavens and caused every kind of noble plant to grow. This is the creation of Allah. Now show me what others beside Him have created. The wrongdoers are in obvious error.*

The Koran describes the qualities of Allah.

*40:61 Allah made the night so you could rest and the day to give you light for seeing. Allah is rich in bounties to men, but most men do not give thanks. Such is Allah your Lord, creator of all things. There is no god but Allah. Why then are you turned from the truth? Those who deny the signs of Allah are turned aside.*

*40:64 Allah made the earth for you as a resting place and built up the heavens over it. He formed you and made your forms beautiful, and provided you with good things. This is Allah your Lord. Blessed be Allah, Lord of the worlds. He is the living one. There is no god but Allah. Call on Him with sincere devotion. Praise be to Allah, Lord of the worlds.*

*40:66 Say: I am forbidden to worship any beside Allah after the clear signs that have come to me from my Lord, and I am commanded to submit to the Lord of the worlds.*

## THE SATANIC VERSES

Mohammed was always thinking of how he could persuade all the Meccans. It came to him that the three gods of the Quraysh could intercede with Allah. Mohammed said, "These are the exalted high flying cranes whose intercession is approved." The Meccans were delighted and happy. Satan had fooled Mohammed.

*22:52 Never have We sent a prophet or messenger before you whom Satan did not tempt with evil desires, but Allah will bring Satan's temptations to nothing. Allah will affirm His revelations, for He is knowing and wise. He makes Satan's suggestions a temptation for those whose hearts are diseased or for those whose hearts are hardened. Truly, this is why the Kafirs are in great opposition so that those who have been given*

*knowledge will know that the Koran is the truth from their Lord and so that they may believe in it and humbly submit to Him. Allah will truly guide the believers to the right path.*

*22:55 But the Kafirs will never stop doubting until the Hour of Judgment comes upon them unaware or until the punishment of a disastrous day. On that day Allah's rule will be absolute. He will judge between them. And those who believed and did good works will be led into Gardens of delight. As for the Kafirs who treated Our signs as lies, they will receive a shameful punishment.*

The Koran is constant in its admonitions about whom a Muslim should be friends with (there are 12 verses that say a Muslim is not the friend of a Kafir.

*9:23 Oh, Believers, do not make friends of your fathers or your brothers if they love unbelief above Islam. He who makes them his friends does wrong. Say: If your fathers, and your sons, and your brothers, and your wives, and your kin-folks, and the wealth which you have gained, and the merchandise that you fear you will not sell, and the dwellings in which you delight—if all are dearer to you than Allah and His Messenger and efforts on His Path, then wait until Allah's command comes to pass. Allah does not guide the impious.*

*3:28 Believers should not take Kafirs as friends in preference to other believers. Those who do this will have none of Allah's protection and will only have themselves as guards. Allah warns you to fear Him for all will return to Him.*

*3:118 Believers! Do not become friends with anyone except your own people. The Kafirs will not rest until they have corrupted you. They wish nothing but your ruin. Their hatred of you is made clear by their words, but even greater hatred is hidden within their hearts. We have made Our signs clear to you. Therefore, do your best to comprehend them.*

*5:57 Oh, you who believe, do not take those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] before you, who have scoffed and jested at your religion, or who are Kafirs for your friends. Fear Allah if you are true believers. When you call to prayer, they make it a mockery and a joke. This is because they are a people who do not understand.*

1260 In the market there was a Christian slave who ran a booth. Mohammed would go and speak with him at length. This led to the Quraysh saying that what Mohammed said in the Koran, came from the Christian slave. The Koran's response:

*32:1 ALIF. LAM. MIM. This Book is without a doubt a revelation sent down from the Lord of the worlds. Do they say, "He [Mohammed] has made it up"? No. It is the truth sent from your Lord so that you may warn a people who have not yet been warned so that they may be guided.*

## THE NIGHT JOURNEY

*17:1 Glory to Allah, Who took His servant on a night time journey from the Sacred Mosque in Mecca to the furthest Mosque [Jerusalem], whose neighborhood We have blessed so that We might show him Our signs: He, and only He, hears and sees all things.*

1264 Gabriel took Mohammed to Jerusalem to the site of the Temple. There at the temple were Jesus, Abraham, Moses, and other prophets. Mohammed led them in prayer. Then Gabriel took Mohammed up to the seven heavens.

1271 When Mohammed got to the seventh heaven his Lord gave him the duty of fifty prayers a day. When he returned, Moses asked him how many prayers Allah had given him. When Moses heard that it was fifty, he said, "Prayer is a weighty matter and your people are weak. Go back and ask your Lord to reduce the number for you and your community. Allah reduced the number to five. In the Night Journey we see Mohammed as the successor to the Jewish prophets.

Here we see the story of Noah and Moses adapted to Mohammed's needs.

*10:71 Tell them the history of Noah when he said to his people, "Oh, my people, if my stay and my reminding you of the signs of Allah are grievous to you, I still trust Allah. So choose a course of action—you and your false gods. Do not let your plans be uncertain to you. Then come to some decision about me, and do not delay. If you turn your backs on me, I ask no reward from you. My reward is with Allah alone, and I am commanded to submit to Allah's will." But they treated him as a liar, and We rescued him and those with him in the ark, and We made*



*them to inherit the earth while We drowned those who rejected Our signs. See what was the end of those who were warned?*

*10:74 Then after him, We sent messengers to their peoples, and they brought them clear signs, but they would not believe in what they had denied earlier. So We seal up the hearts of the transgressors. After them We sent Moses and Aaron with Our signs to Pharaoh and his nobles, but they were arrogant and a guilty people. When the truth came to them from Us, they said, "This is clear sorcery."*

*10:77 Moses said, "What do you say of the truth when it has come to you, 'Is this sorcery?' but sorcerers will not prosper."*

*10:78 They said, "Have you come to us to turn us away from the faith of our fathers so that you and your brother will have greatness in this land? We are not going to believe in you."*

*10:79 Pharaoh said, "Fetch me every skilled magician." When the magicians arrived, Moses said to them, "Cast down what you have to cast."*

*10:81 And when they had cast them down, Moses said, "What you have brought is sorcery, and Allah will render them vain. Allah does not uphold the work of mischief-makers. Allah will verify the truth by his words, though the guilty may be averse to it." And none believed in Moses except some of the children of his people because they feared that Pharaoh and his nobles would persecute them. Pharaoh was a tyrant in the land and one who committed excesses.*

*10:84 And Moses said, "Oh, my people, if you believe in Allah, put your trust in Him and submit."*

*10:85 They said, "In Allah we put our trust. Oh, our Lord, do not make us subject to the persecution of unjust people, and deliver us by Your mercy from the unbelieving people."*

Islam defines the Jews.

*45:16 Long ago we gave to the Children of Israel the Torah and the wisdom and the gift of prophecy, and We provided them with the good things. We favored them over all nations. We gave them clear commandments, but after they received knowledge, they began to differ amongst themselves because of envy. Your Lord will judge between them on the Day of Reckoning concerning these issues which separated them.*

7:163 *Ask them about the town that stood by the sea, how the Jews broke the Sabbath. Their fish came to them on their Sabbath day appearing on the surface of the water. But during the work week there were no fish to catch. So We made a trial of them for they were evildoers. And when some of them said, "Why do you preach to those whom Allah is about to destroy or chastise with awful doom?" They said, "To do our duty for the Lord so that they may be able to ward off evil."*

7:165 *When they disregarded the warnings that had been given to them [not to work on the Sabbath], We rescued those who had forbidden wrongdoing, and We punished the wrongdoers for their transgressions. But when they persisted in what they had been forbidden, We said to them, "Be as apes, despised and loathed." [The Jews were changed into apes.]*

7:167 *Then the Lord declared that until Resurrection Day, He would use others to punish the Jews, for the Lord is quick to punish, and most surely is He forgiving and merciful. And We sent them out on the land as separate nations. Some of them were righteous and some were not. We have tried them with prosperity and adversity in order that they might return to Us.*

1272 Mohammed continued to preach Islam and condemn the old Arabic religions. There were those of the Quraysh who defended their culture and religion and argued with him. Mohammed called them mockers and cursed one of them, "Oh Allah, blind him and kill his son." The Koran records the Meccan's resistance as plots and schemes.

6:124 *So We have placed wicked ringleaders in every city to scheme there, but they only plot against themselves, and they do not realize it. And when a sign comes to them they say, "We will not believe until we receive one like those that Allah's messengers received." Allah knows best where to place His message. The Kafirs will be disgraced when they receive their punishment for their scheming.*

6:125 *For those whom Allah intends to guide, He will open their hearts to Islam. But for those whom He intends to mislead, He will make their hearts closed and hard, as though they had to climb up to the heavens. Thus does Allah penalize the Kafirs. And this is the right way of your Lord. We have detailed Our signs for those who will listen and see. They*

*shall have an abode of peace with their Lord. He will be their protecting friend because of their works.*

And if Mohammed were actually a prophet, why not show them something other than words. Why not do a miracle?

*13:27 The Kafirs say: Why does his Lord not send a sign down to him? Say: Allah will truly mislead whom he chooses and will guide to Himself those who turn to Him. They believe and their hearts find rest in remembering Allah. Without a doubt all hearts find rest in the remembrance of Allah. Those who believe and do what is right will be blessed and find joy in the end.*

*13:30 Therefore, We have sent you to a nation before which other nations have passed away so that you may recite Our revelations to them. Nevertheless they deny the merciful Allah. Say: He is my Lord; there is no god but Him. I put my trust in Him, and to Him I will return.*

*13:31 If there were a Koran that could move mountains, tear the earth apart, or make the dead speak, this would be it! Allah is in command of all things! Do the believers not know that if it had been Allah's will, He could have guided all the people? Disaster will never cease to afflict the Kafirs for their wrongful deeds or to come into their homes until Allah's will is fulfilled. Allah will not fail to keep His promise.*

*13:32 Many messengers who came before you were mocked. For a long time We allowed the Kafirs to go unpunished, but finally We punished them. Then how terrible was Our punishment!*

If Judgment Day were to come, then the Meccans asked Mohammed to tell Allah to bring it here this day and prove Mohammed was a true prophet.

*29:44 Allah created the heavens and the earth in truth. This is a sign to those who believe.*

*29:47 So it is that We have sent down the Book [Koran] to you [Mohammed]. Those [the Jews] to whom We have given the Book of the law believe in it, and some other Arabians there believe in it. None, save the Kafirs, reject our signs.*

*29:48 You [Mohammed] were not a reader of the Scripture before this book came, nor did you write one with your right hand. Then the critics could have treated it as a vain thing and doubted it. But it is a clear sign in the hearts of those whom knowledge has reached. None but the unjust reject Our signs. They say, "Why are the signs not sent down to him*

*from his Lord?” Say: The signs are in the power of Allah alone. I am only a plain warner. Is it not enough for them that We have revealed to you the Book to be recited to them? This is a mercy and a warning to those who believe. Say: Allah is witness enough between me and you. He knows all that is in the heavens and the earth. Those who believe in the falsehood and reject Allah—these will be the lost ones.*

*29:53 They will challenge you to hasten the punishment. If there had not been a season fixed for it, the punishment would have already come upon them. It will come on them suddenly when they are not looking for it. They will ask you to hasten the punishment, but Hell will encompass the Kafirs. One day the punishment shall wrap around them, both from above them and from below them, and Allah will say, “Taste your own doings.”*

*29:56 Oh, My servants who believe, My earth is vast; therefore, serve Me. Every soul will have a taste of death. Then to Us you will return. Those who believe and serve righteousness, We will house in Gardens with palaces, beneath which the rivers flow. They will abide there forever. How good the reward of the workers, those who patiently endure and put their trust in their Lord.*

Mohammed continued to tell about older Arabian cultures that had refused to listen to their prophets. In every case, Allah smote them with a terrible scourge.

*41:13 But if they turn away, say to them, “I have warned you of a disaster like the scourge that punished Ad [Ad lay on an old trade route north of Mecca. It was abandoned in Mohammed’s day] and Thamud [the people of a ruined Nabatean city near Medina].”*

*41:14 When their messengers came from all directions saying, “Serve only Allah,” they answered, “If our Lord had wished, He would have sent angels down to us, so we do not believe the message you carry.”*

*41:15 As for the people of Ad, they were unjustly arrogant throughout the land, and they said, “Who has more power than us?” Could they not see that Allah, Who created them, was more powerful than themselves? Still, they continued to reject Our signs! So we sent a furious wind against them during days of disaster so that We might make them taste the penalty of disgrace in this life. The penalty of the afterlife will be even more disgraceful. They will not be helped.*

41:17 *We showed the people of Thamud [the people of a ruined Nabatean city near Medina] the right way, but they preferred blindness to guidance. So the scourge of humiliation overtook them because that was what they earned. However, We saved those who believed and acted righteously. On the day when the enemies of Allah are gathered to face the Fire, they will be marched together in groups. When they reach the Fire, their ears, eyes, and skin will bear witness against them for what they have done.*

41:21 *They will say to their skins, "Why do you testify against us?" And their reply will be, "Allah, Who has given speech to all things, has made us speak. He created you originally, and you will be returned to Him. You did not try to hide yourselves so that your ears, eyes, and skins could testify against you. You thought that Allah was unaware of most of the things that you did. But this evil thought of yours [that there are other gods] has brought you to destruction, and now you are one of the lost."*

41:24 *And though they are resigned, the Fire will still be their home. If they ask for goodwill, they will not receive it. We have given them companions in this world who made their present and past seem good to them. They deserve the fate of the past generations of j̣inns and men. They are certainly losers.*

## MOHAMMED'S PROTECTOR AND WIFE BOTH DIE

1278 After Abu Talib's death, the pressure on Mohammed grew. It reached the point where one of the Quraysh threw dust at Mohammed. This was the worst that happened.

The death of his wife, Khadija, had no political effect, but it was a blow to Mohammed. His wife was his chief confidant, and she consoled him.

## MOHAMMED'S NEW MARRIAGES

About three months after the death of Khadija Mohammed married Sauda, a widow and a Muslim.

Abu Bakr had a daughter, Aisha, who was six years old. Soon after marrying Sauda Mohammed was betrothed to Aisha, who was to become his favorite wife. The consummation would not take place until she turned nine.

# POLITICAL BEGINNINGS

## CHAPTER 5

*24:52 It is such as obey Allah and His Apostle, and fear Allah and do right, that will win (in the end).*

1279 With his protector's death, Mohammed needed political allies. Mohammed went to the city of Taif, about fifty miles away. In Taif he met with three brothers who were politically powerful. Mohammed called them to Islam and asked them to help him in his struggles with the Meccans.

1280 Since they could not agree, Mohammed asked them to keep their meeting private. But Taif was a small town and within days everyone knew of Mohammed's presence. Mohammed kept condemning them and their kind, until one day a mob gathered and drove him out of town, pelting him with stones.

1281 Half way back to Mecca, he spent the night. When he arose for his night prayer, the Koran says that jinns came to hear him pray.

*46:29 We sent a company of jinn so that they might hear the Koran. When the reading was finished, they returned to their people with warnings. They said, "Oh, people! We have heard a scripture sent down since the days of Moses verifying previous scriptures, a guide to the truth and the straight path. Oh, people! Hear the Messenger of Allah and believe Him that He will forgive your faults and protect you from tormenting punishment."*

*46:32 Those who do not respond to Allah's messenger cannot defeat His plan on earth, and he will have no protectors beside Him. Such men are in flagrant error. Have they not seen that Allah, who created the heavens and the earth and was not wearied by their creation, can give life to the dead? Yes, He has power over all things.*

*46:34 On the day the Kafirs are set before the Fire and are asked, "Is this not the truth?" they will say, "Yes, by Our Lord!" He will say, "Then taste the punishment because you did not believe." Then be patient, as the messengers had patience and firmness, and do not try to hasten their doom. When they see what has been promised them, it will be as if they had waited but one hour. Will any perish except those who have transgressed?*

## PREACHING BACK IN MECCA

1282 When the Arab pilgrims came to Mecca, as they had for centuries, Mohammed went out to the crowd of visitors and told them he was the prophet of Allah and brought them the Koran.

*11:111 And truly your Lord will repay everyone according to their deeds for He is well aware of what they do.*

*11:112 Continue on the right path as you have been commanded—you and those who have turned to Allah with you—and do no wrong. He knows what you do. Do not depend on the evildoers for fear that the Fire will seize you. You have no protector beside Allah, and you will not be helped against Him. Observe prayer at early morning, at the close of the day, and at the approach of night, for good deeds drive away evil deeds. This is a warning for the mindful. Be patient, for Allah will not let the reward of the righteous perish.*

*11:116 Why were there not men with virtue, who were not corrupt, in the generations before you except the few whom we saved from harm? The evildoers enjoyed the selfish pleasures of earthly life, and became sinners. Your Lord would not destroy cities unjustly while its people were doing right.*

*11:118 If the Lord pleased, He could have made mankind of one nation, but only those to whom your Lord has granted His mercy will cease to differ. For this He created them, for the word of your Lord will be fulfilled: “I will completely fill Hell with jinn and men together.”*

Mohammed spoke of the greatness of Allah to the Meccans and the pilgrims.

*42:1 HA. MIM. AIN. SIN. KAF. Allah sends inspiration to you as He did to those before you. He is mighty and wise. All that is in the heavens and all that is in the earth is His. He is the High, the Great.*

*42:5 The heavens are almost split apart while the angels celebrate praise of their Lord and ask forgiveness for those on earth. Allah is indulgent and merciful. But those who take protectors besides Him—Allah watches them, but you have no charge over them.*

*42:7 So We have revealed to you an Arabic Koran so that you may warn the mother-city [Mecca] and all around it, and warn them of that day of the gathering, of which there is no doubt, when some will be in Paradise and some in the Flame.*

42:8 *If Allah had desired, He could have made them one people and of one creed, but He brings whom He will into His mercy. As for the evildoers, they will have no friend or helper. Have they taken other patrons than Him? Allah is the protecting friend. He gives life to the dead, and He is mighty over all things.*

42:10 *Whatever your differences may be, the decision rests with Allah. This is Allah, my Lord. I trust in Him and turn to Him. He is the Creator of the heavens and of the earth, and He gave you mates from among yourselves and mates for cattle, too. This is how He multiplies you. There is nothing else like Him. He is the hearer and the seer. He holds the keys of the heavens and of the earth. He gives open-handedly or He gives sparingly to whomever He desires. He knows all things.*

## THE BEGINNING OF POWER AND JIHAD IN MEDINA

Although Medina was about a ten-day journey from Mecca, since ancient times the Medinans had come to Mecca for the fairs. Medina was half Jewish and half Arabian, and there was an ongoing tension between the two groups. The Jews worked as farmers and craftsmen and were literate. They were the wealthy class, but their power was slowly waning. In times past the Arabs had raided and stolen from the Jews who retaliated by saying that one day a prophet would come and lead them to victory over the Arabs. In spite of the tensions, the Arab tribe of Khazraj were allies with them.

1286 So when the members of the Khazraj met Mohammed, they said among themselves, “This is the prophet the Jews spoke of. Let us join ranks with him before the Jews do.” They became Muslims, and their tribe was rancorous and divided. They hoped that Islam could unite them, and soon every house in Medina had heard of Islam.

1289 The next year when the Medinan Muslims returned to Mecca, they took an oath to Mohammed. They returned to Medina, and soon many of Medinans submitted to Islam.

1294 At the next fair in Mecca, many of the new Muslims from Medina showed up. They gave their oath to Mohammed. After the oath, one of them asked about their now severed ties to the Jews of Medina. If they helped Mohammed with arms and they were successful would he go back to Mecca? Mohammed smiled and said, “No, blood is blood, and blood not to be paid for is blood not to be paid for.” Blood revenge and its obligation



were common to them. “I will war against them that war against you and be at peace with those at peace with you.”

## THE OPENING WORDS OF WAR

<sup>1313</sup> Up to now the main tension in the division in the Quraysh tribe over the new religion had been resolved by words. Curses and insults had been exchanged. Mohammed condemned the Meccans on an almost daily basis. The Quraysh had mocked Mohammed and abused lower class converts. What blood had been drawn had been in the equivalent of a brawl. Dust had been thrown, but no real violence. No one had died.

## IMMIGRATION

<sup>1314</sup> The Muslim Medinans had pledged Mohammed support in war and to help the Muslims from Mecca. The Muslims in Mecca left and went to Medina. The Muslims from both Mecca and Medina were about to be tested.

*29:1 ELIF. LAM. MIM. Do men think that they will be left alone when they say, “We believe,” and that they will not be tested? We tested those who lived before them, so Allah will surely know who is sincere and who is false. Do the ones who work evil think that they will escape Us? Their judgment is evil.*

*29:5 Whoever hopes to meet Allah, the set time will surely come. He hears and knows. Whoever makes efforts for the faith makes them for his own good only. Allah is independent of His creatures. As for those who believe and do good works, We will blot out all evil from them, and We will reward them according to their best actions.*

# THE KORAN OF MEDINA

# THE JEWS

## CHAPTER 6

*9:63 Do they not know that whoever opposes Allah and His Messenger will abide in the Fire of Hell, where they will remain forever? This is the great shame.*

When Mohammed came to Medina Jews comprised about half the town. There were three tribes of Jews and two tribes of Arabs. The Jews were farmers and tradesmen and lived in their own fortified quarters. In general they were better educated and more prosperous than the Arabs.

Before Mohammed arrived, there had been bad blood and killing among the tribes. The last battle had been fought by the two Arab tribes, but each of the Jewish tribes had joined the battle with their particular Arab allies.

1351 The rabbis began to ask Mohammed difficult questions. But, doubts about Allah were evil. In Mecca, Mohammed had divided the community into Islam and those of the native Arabic religions. In Mecca he adopted all the classical Jewish stories to prove his prophesy and spoke well of the Jews. But there were almost no Jews living in Mecca, and therefore, no one to differ with him.

In Medina half of the population were Jews, who let Mohammed know that they disagreed with him. So in Medina, Mohammed argued with Jews as well as the Kafir Arabs. Even though there were very few in the town who were Christian, Mohammed argued against them as well. All Kafirs were verbally attacked in Medina.

### THE REAL TORAH IS IN THE KORAN

Mohammed said repeatedly that the Jews and Christians corrupted their sacred texts in order to conceal the fact that he was prophesied in their scriptures. The stories in the Koran are similar to those of the Jew's scriptures, but they make different points. In the Koran, all of the stories found in Jewish scripture indicated that Allah destroyed those cultures that did not listen to their messengers.

1364 But the Jews did not believe that Mohammed was a prophet. As a result, they are in error and cursed by Allah. And by denying his prophethood they conspired against him and Islam.

*2:40 Children of Israel! Remember the favor I have given you, and keep your covenant with Me. I will keep My covenant with you. Fear My*

*power. Believe in what I reveal [the Koran], which confirms your Scriptures, and do not be the first to disbelieve it. Do not part with My revelations for a petty price. Fear Me alone. Do not mix up the truth with lies or knowingly hide the truth [the Jews hid their scriptures that foretold Mohammed would be the final prophet]. Be committed to your prayers, give to charity regularly, and bow down with those who bow down. Would you instruct others to be righteous and forget to attend to your own duties? You read the Scriptures! Do you not have sense? Seek guidance with patience and prayer; this is indeed a hard duty, but not for the humble who remember that they will have to meet their Lord and will return to Him.*

1367 The Koran repeats the many favors that Allah has done for the Jews—they were the chosen people, delivered from slavery under the pharaoh, given the sacred Torah and all they have ever done is to sin. They have been forgiven many times by Allah, and still, they are as hard as rocks and refuse to believe Mohammed. They have perverted the Torah after understanding it.

*2:75 Can you believers then hope that the Jews will believe you even though they heard the Word of Allah and purposefully altered it [the Jews hid their scriptures that foretold Mohammed would be the final prophet] after they understood its meaning? And when they are among the believers they say, “We believe too,” but when they are alone with one another they say, “Will you tell them what Allah has revealed to you so that they can argue with you about it in the presence of your Lord?” Do you not have any sense? Do they not realize that Allah knows what they hide as well as what they reveal?*

1369 The Jews’ sins are so great that Allah has changed them into apes.

*2:63 And remember, Children of Israel, when We made a covenant with you and raised Mount Sinai before you saying, “Hold tightly to what We have revealed to you and keep it in mind so that you may guard against evil.” But then you turned away, and if it had not been for Allah’s grace and mercy, you surely would have been among the lost. And you know those among you who sinned on the Sabbath. We said to them, “You will be transformed into despised apes.” So we used them as a warning to their people and to the following generations, as well as a lesson for the Allah-fearing.*

1370 The Jews have understood the truth of Mohammed and then changed their scriptures to avoid admitting that Mohammed is right.

*5:59 Say: Oh, people of the Book [Jews and Christians], do you not reject us only because we believe in Allah, in what He has sent down to us, in what He has sent before us, and because most of you are wrongdoers? Say: Can I tell you of retribution worse than this that awaits them with Allah? It is for those who incurred the curse of Allah and His anger; those whom He changed into apes [Jews] and swine [Christians]; those who worship evil are in a worse place, and have gone far astray from the right path.*

*5:61 When they presented themselves to you, they said, "We believe," but they came as Kafirs to you, and as Kafirs they left. Allah well knew what they concealed. You will see many of them striving with one another to hurry sin, to exceed limits, and to eat unlawful things. What they do is evil. Why do their doctors and rabbis not forbid them from the habit of uttering wickedness and eating unlawful food? Certainly, their works are evil.*

*2:174 Those [the Jews] who conceal any part of the Scriptures which Allah has revealed in order to gain a small profit shall ingest nothing but Fire in their stomachs. Allah will not speak to them on the Day of Resurrection, and they will pay a painful penalty. They are the ones who buy error at the price of guidance and torture at the price of forgiveness; how intently they seek the Fire!*

## AN OMINOUS CHANGE

1381 In Mecca Mohammed spoke well of the Jews, who were very few. In Medina there were many Jews and his relations were tense. Up to now Mohammed had lead prayer in the direction of Jerusalem. Now the kiblah, direction of prayer, was changed to the Kabah in Mecca. Some of the Jews came to him and asked why he had changed the direction of prayer. After all, he said that he followed the religion of Abraham. The Koran responded:

*2:142 The foolish ones will say, "What makes them turn from the kiblah [the direction they faced during Islamic prayer]?" Say: Both the east and the west belong to Allah. He will guide whom He likes to the right path. We have made you [Muslims] the best of nations so that you can be witnesses over the world and so that the messenger may be a witness*

*for you. We appointed the former kiblah towards Jerusalem and now Mecca so that We could identify the messenger's true followers and those who would turn their backs on him. It was truly a hard test, but not for those whom Allah guided. It was not Allah's purpose that your faith should be in vain, for Allah is full of pity and merciful toward mankind. We have seen you [Mohammed] turn your face to every part of Heaven for guidance, and now We will have you turn to a kiblah that pleases you. So turn your face towards the direction of the sacred Mosque, and wherever the believers are, they will turn their faces toward it. The People of the Book know that this is the truth from their Lord, and Allah is not unaware of what they do. Even if you were to give the People of the Book [Jews] every sign, they would not accept your kiblah, nor would you accept theirs. None of them will accept the kiblah of the others. If you should follow their way after receiving the knowledge you possess, then you will certainly be a part of the unrighteous.*

*62:5 Those to whom the Torah [the first five books of the Old Testament] was given and do not follow it can be compared to a donkey who is made to carry a load of books but is unable to understand them. Those who reject Allah's revelations are a sorry example. Allah does not guide those who do wrong.*

*4:44 Have you not thought about those [Jews] to whom a part of the Scripture was given? They buy error for themselves and wish to see you go astray from the right path. But Allah knows your enemies best. Allah is sufficient as your protector, and Allah is sufficient as your helper. Some among the Jews take words out of the context of the Scriptures and say, "We have heard, and we disobey. We hear as one who does not hear. Look at us!" in this way twisting the phrase and defiling the faith. But if they said, "We hear and obey. Hear us and look at us!" it would be better for them and more righteous. But Allah has cursed them for their disbelief; only a few of them have faith!*

*4:47 To those of you [Jews and Christians] to whom the Scriptures were given: Believe in what We have sent down confirming the Scriptures you already possess before We destroy your faces and twist your heads around backwards, or curse you as We did those [the Jews] who broke the Sabbath for Allah's commandments will be carried out.*

# THE CHRISTIANS

## CHAPTER 7

33:21 *You have an excellent example in Allah's Messenger for those of you who put your hope in Allah and the Last Day and who praise Allah continually.*

1404 The few Christians in Medina argued religion with Mohammed. They held forth with the doctrine of the Trinity and the divinity of Christ. Mohammed later laid out the Islamic doctrine of the Christian doctrine. The Koran tells in detail the real story of Jesus, who is only another of Allah's prophets, and that the Trinity of the Christians is Allah, Jesus and Mary.

1406 No one has power except through Allah. Allah gave the prophet Jesus the power of raising the dead, healing the sick, making birds of clay and having them fly away. Allah gave Jesus these signs as a mark of his being a prophet. But Allah did not give the powers of appointing kings, the ability to change night to day. These lacks of power show that Jesus was a man, not part of a Trinity. If he were part of God, then all powers would have been in his command. Then he would not have to have been under the dominion of kings.

1407-8 Christ spoke in the cradle and then spoke to men as a grown man. Speaking from the cradle is a sign of his being a prophet. Christ's prophethood was confirmed by making clay birds fly. By Allah Christ healed the blind, the lepers, and raised the dead.

5:109 *One day Allah will assemble the messengers and say, "What response did you receive from mankind?" They will say, "We have no knowledge. You are the knower of secrets." Then Allah will say, "Oh Jesus, Son of Mary, remember my favor to you and your mother when I strengthened you with the Holy Spirit [Gabriel] so that you would speak to men alike in childhood and when grown. I taught you the Scripture, wisdom, the Torah, and the Gospel, and you created the figure of a bird with clay, by my permission, and breathed into it. With My permission it became a bird. You also healed the blind and the leper, with My permission. With My permission you raised the dead. I restrained the Children of Israel from harming you when you went to them with clear signs, and the Kafirs said, "This is nothing but plain sorcery."*

5:111 *When I revealed to the disciples, "Believe in Me and the One I sent," they said, "We believe and bear witness to You that we are*

*Muslims.”*

1408 Christ only comes through Allah. Christ's signs of being a prophet come only from Allah. Jesus enjoins others to worship Allah, not him. But people refused to hear him, the Disciples came forth to help him with his mission. The Disciples were servants of Allah and were Muslims just like Christ.

1409 Christ was not crucified. When the Jews plotted against Christ, they found Allah to be the best plotter. Allah took Jesus up directly to him and will refute those who say he was crucified and was resurrected. On the final day, the Day of Resurrection, those who follow Christ but do not believe in his divinity will be blessed. Those who insist that Christ is God, part of the Trinity, and reject true faith will be punished in Hell.

*3:54 So the Jews plotted and Allah plotted, but Allah is the best of plotters. And Allah said, “Jesus! I am going to end your life on earth and lift you up to Me. [Jesus did not die on the cross. He was taken to Allah. He will return to kill the anti-Christ and then die a natural death.] I will send the Kafirs away from you and lift up those who believe above all others until the Day of Resurrection. Then all will return to Me and I will judge their disputes. As for the Kafirs, they will be punished with excruciating agony in this world and the world to come. They will have no one to help them. As for the believers who do good works, He will fully reward them. Allah does not love those who do wrong. These signs and this wise warning We bring to you.”*

Although the Koran says less about Christians than Jews, it does address them.

*4:171 People of the Book [Christians]! Do not overstep the boundaries of your religion and speak only what is true about Allah. The Messiah, Jesus, the son of Mary, is only Allah's messenger and his Word which he sent into Mary was a spirit from Him. Therefore, believe in Allah and His messengers and do not say, “Trinity.” Hold back and it will be better for you. Allah is only one god. Far be it from Allah to have a son! All in the heavens and earth are His. Allah is the sufficient as a protector. The Messiah does not condescend to be Allah's servant, nor do His favored angels. Those who disdain service to Him, and are filled with arrogance, Allah will gather them all together before Him.*



61:6 *And remember when Jesus, son of Mary, said, "Children of Israel! I am Allah's messenger sent to confirm the Law which was already revealed to you and to bring good news of a messenger who will come after me whose name will be Ahmad." [Ahmad was one of Mohammed's names. This quote of Jesus is not found in any Christian scriptures.] Yet when he [Mohammed] came to them with clear signs, they said, "This is merely sorcery!" And who is more evil than the one who, when called to submit to Islam, makes up a lie about Allah? Allah does not guide the evil-doers! They wish to put out Allah's light with their mouths, but as much as the Kafirs hate it, Allah will perfect His light.*

5:112 *Remember when the disciples said, "Oh Jesus, Son of Mary, is your Lord able to send down a table to us spread with food from heaven?" He said, "Fear Allah if you are believers." They said, "We desire to eat from it, to satisfy hearts, to know that you have spoken the truth to us, and to be witnesses to the miracle." Jesus, Son of Mary, said, "Oh Allah, our Lord, send down a table spread with food from heaven that it will become a recurring festival from the first of us and to the last of us, and a sign from You, and do nourish us, for You are the best provider." Allah said, "I will send it down to you, but whoever among you disbelieves after that, I will surely inflict a punishment on him unlike any I have inflicted on any other creature."*

5:116 *And when Allah says, "Oh Jesus, Son of Mary, did you say to mankind, 'Take me and my mother as two gods, beside Allah?'" He will say, "Glory be unto You. It is not for me to say what I had no right to say. If I had said that, You would have known it. You know what is in my heart. I do not know what is in Your heart. You know all that is hidden." "I only said what You commanded me to say, 'Worship Allah, my Lord and your Lord,' and I was a witness of their actions while I was among them. When You caused me to die, You watched them, and You are witness of all things. If You punish them, they are Your servants, and if You forgive them, You are mighty and wise."*

The Koran often uses the term People of the Book. At the time of Mohammed there were no books in Arabic. The written Arabic was used mostly for business. Since both Christianity and Judaism used religious texts this was distinctive. The term People of the Book can refer to either Jews or Christians, or both Jews and Christians.

Muslims tell Christians and Jews they are not Kafirs, but People of the Book. However, only those Christians who believe that Jesus was not the Son of God, there is no Trinity, Jesus was not crucified, did not die and was not resurrected, and that the Gospels are a lie, are true Christians. Only those Jews who think that Mohammed was the last prophet are truly Jews.

Said another way, Christians and Jews are Kafirs, just like anybody else who does not think that Mohammed is the prophet of Allah.

# THE HYPOCRITES

## CHAPTER 8

47:33 *Believers! Obey Allah and the messenger, and do not let your effort be in vain.*

### THE HYPOCRITES

1351 Before Mohammed arrived, the Arabs were content with their religion and tolerant of others. Many Arabs became Muslims due to a pressure to join Islam. But in secret they were hypocrites who allied themselves with the Jews because they thought Mohammed was deluded.

1365 The Koran gives an analogy about the hypocrites:

2:8 *And some of the people [the Jews] say, "We believe in Allah and the Day," although they do not really believe. They wish to deceive Allah and His believers, but they fool no one but themselves although they do not know it. Their hearts are diseased, and Allah has increased their suffering. They will suffer an excruciating doom because of their lies.*

2:11 *And when they are told, "Do not make evil in the earth," they say, "We are only trying to make peace." But they truly are the evil-doers even though they do not realize it. When it is said to them, "Believe as others have believed," they say, "Should we believe as the fools believe?" They are the fools, if only they knew it! And when they meet with the faithful they say, "We believe too." But when they are alone with their fellow devils [Jews and Christians] they say, "Really, we are with you. We were only mocking them." Allah will throw their mockery back on them and leave them to wander alone in their blindness.*

1355 One of the Medinans became a Muslim and later began to doubt the truth of Mohammed and said, "If this man is right, we are worse than donkeys." Allegiance to Islam comes before family, nation, or friend. When Mohammed confronted him about his remarks and doubts, he denied it. The Koran's comments:

9:74 *They swear by Allah that they said nothing wrong, yet they spoke blasphemy, and some Muslims became Kafirs. They planned what they could not carry out [a plan against Mohammed], and only disapproved of it because Allah and His Messenger had enriched them by His bounty [the resistance to Mohammed decreased when the money*

*from the spoils of war came into the Medinan economy]. If they repent, it will be better for them, but if they fall back into their sin, Allah will afflict them with a painful doom in this world and the next. On earth, they will have neither friend nor protector.*

1357 Mohammed used to say about one of the hypocrites that he had the same face as Satan. The man used to sit and listen to Mohammed and then take back to the hypocrites what he said. He said of Mohammed, "Mohammed is all ears. If anyone tells him anything, he will believe it." The Koran speaks of him and other hypocrites:

*9:61 There are some of them who injure the Messenger and say, "He is only a hearer." Say: He is a hearer of good for you. He believes in Allah and believes in the faithful. He is a mercy to those of you who believe, but those who injure the Messenger of Allah will suffer a painful doom. They swear to you by Allah to please you, but Allah and His Messenger are worthier, so they should please Him if they are believers.*

*9:63 Do they not know that whoever opposes Allah and His Messenger will abide in the Fire of Hell, where they will remain forever? This is the great shame.*

1358 One of the hypocrites excused his criticism by saying that he was only talking and jesting. No criticism was too small to be unnoticed.

*9:65 If you ask them, they will surely say, "We were only talking idly and jesting." Say: Do you mock Allah, His signs, and His Messenger? Make no excuse. You have rejected faith after you accepted it. If we forgive some of you, we will punish others because they are evildoers. Hypocritical men and women have an understanding with one another. They command what is evil, forbid what is just, and do not pay the poor tax. They have forgotten Allah, and He has forgotten them. The hypocrites are the rebellious wrongdoers. Allah promises the hypocritical men and women and the Kafirs the Fire of Hell, and they will abide there; it is enough for them. Allah has cursed them, and an eternal torment will be theirs.*

1365 The hypocrites change their faces depending upon who they are with. When they are with the Muslims, they believe. But when they are with the evil ones (the Jews) they say they are with the Jews. It is the Jews who order them to deny the truth and contradict Mohammed.

4:138 *Warn the hypocrites that torturous punishment awaits them. The hypocrites take Kafirs as friends rather than believers. Do they look for honor at their hands? Truly all honor belongs to Allah.*

# JIHAD, WAR AGAINST ALL

## CHAPTER 9

*4:42 On that day, the Kafirs and those who disobeyed the Messenger will wish they could sink into the earth for they cannot hide a single thing from Allah.*

The Muslims were poor and the Meccans were rich. Then there was the matter of being driven out of Mecca and Mohammed wanted revenge. He had a idea that took care of both wealth and revenge. He would attack the Meccan caravans.

### JIHAD—THE FIRST KILLING

1416-423 Mohammed sent forth his fighters on seven armed raids to find the trade caravans headed to Mecca. Not a mission found a caravan.

1423-4 Then Mohammed sent Abdullah out with eight men. They used a deception of being religious pilgrims to be able to attack, then kill and capture men and the caravan goods. The Meccans accused Mohammed of being a war criminal who had violated Arabic war code by attacking in the sacred month.

But the Koran said:

*2:216 You are commanded to fight although you dislike it. You may hate something that is good for you, and love something that is bad for you. Allah knows and you do not. When they ask you about fighting in the holy month, say: Fighting at this time is a serious offense, but it is worse in Allah's eyes to deny others the path to Him, to disbelieve in Him, and to drive His worshippers out of the Sacred Mosque. Idolatry is a greater sin than murder. They will not stop fighting you until you turn away from your religion. But any of you who renounce your faith and die an Kafir, will have your works count for nothing in this world and the world to come. These people will be prisoners of the Fire, where they will live forever.*

### FIGHTING IN ALLAH'S CAUSE—BADR

1428 Mohammed's luck was supreme. His enemy, Abu Sufyan, a wealthy merchant had a caravan that passed near Medina. He was able to get a small army to come from Mecca when he found Mohammed was going to attack.

The ensuing battle changed the history of the world as Mohammed went to war outnumbered 3 to 1. Islam won the day.

1476 After the battle of Badr there came about an entire sura of the Koran. The Muslims were not alone. Allah sent a thousand angels to help kill the Kafirs.

*8:2 The true believers are the ones whose hearts tremble with fear at the mention of Allah and whose faith grows stronger when His revelations are revealed to them and in Him they put their trust. True believers are dedicated to their prayers and give generously from that which We have given them. These are truly the believers. They will be raised up and receive forgiveness from their Lord, and they will receive generous provisions.*

*8:5 Remember how your Lord commanded you to leave your homes to fight for the truth, but some of the believers were opposed to it? They disputed the truth after you had revealed it, as if they were being led to certain death before their eyes.*

*8:7 And when Allah promised that you would defeat one of the two groups of enemies, you wished to attack the group that was defenseless. [Mohammed had started out to attack a large, unarmed Meccan caravan. But a thousand-man army from Mecca arrived to protect the caravan.] But Allah wished to justify the truth of His words and to cut the Kafirs down so that the truth would triumph and the lies would be shown false, much to the opposition of the guilty.*

*8:9 Remember when you begged your Lord for help and He said, "I will send the ranks of a thousand angels to your aid?" Allah gave this as a message of good news to bring them hope for victory only comes from Allah. Allah is mighty and wise.*

*8:11 Remember when sleep overcame you, a sign of His reassurance? He sent down rain from the heavens to make you clean and to rid you of the grime of Satan, to strengthen your hearts and steady your feet. [The rain before the battle muddied the ground and hindered the Meccan cavalry.]*

*8:12 Then your Lord spoke to His angels and said, "I will be with you. Give strength to the believers. I will send terror into the Kafirs' hearts, cut off their heads and even the tips of their fingers!" This was because they opposed Allah and His messenger. Ones who oppose Allah and His messenger will be severely punished by Allah. We said, "This is for you! Taste it and know that the Kafirs will receive the torment of the Fire."*

8:15 *Believers! When you meet the Kafirs marching into battle, do not turn your back to them to retreat. Anyone who turns his back on them, unless it is for a tactical advantage or to join another company, will incur Allah's wrath and Hell will be his home, truly a tortuous end. It was not you, but Allah, that killed them. It was not you whose blows destroyed them, but Allah destroyed them so that He might give the believers a gift from Himself. Allah is all-hearing and all-knowing. Therefore, Allah will certainly thwart the plans of the Kafirs.*

8:19 *Meccans! If you sought a judgment, it has now come to you. If you cease in your persecution of the believers, it will be better for you, but if you continue in your war against the faithful, so will We continue to help them. Your vast forces will be no match for Us for Allah stands with the faithful.*

1481 After war and victory there is the spoils of war. One fifth is to go to the Apostle, Allah's prophet.

8:41 *Know that a fifth of all your spoils of war [the traditional cut for the leader was a fourth] belong to Allah, to His messenger, to the messenger's family, the orphans, and needy travelers. Sincerely believe in Allah and in what was sent down to you through His messenger on the day of victory when the two armies met. Allah is powerful over all things.*

1482 In war (jihad) remember Allah all the time and you will prevail. Obey Mohammed, don't argue with him or each other. Don't quit, don't lose morale. Allah will see that you prevail. And when the Kafirs are slain, their troubles have just begun. Allah will use his angels to torture them forever.

8:45 *Believers! When you confront their army stand fast and pray to Allah without ceasing so that you will be victorious. Obey Allah and His messenger, and do not argue with one another for fear that you will lose courage and strength. Be patient for Allah is with the patient. Do not be like the Meccans who left home bragging and full of vainglory. They prevent others from following Allah's path, but Allah knows all that they do.*

8:48 *Satan made their sinful acts seem acceptable to them, and he said, "No one will defeat you this day, and I will be there to help you." When the two armies came within sight of one another, however, he quickly*



*fled saying, "I am finished with you for I can see things which you cannot [the angels were helping to kill the Kafirs]. I fear Allah for Allah's punishment is severe."*

*8:49 The hypocrites [Muslims who were weak in their faith] and those with diseased hearts said, "Their religion has misled the Muslims." But those who have faith in Allah will discover that Allah is mighty and wise. If only you could witness the angels carrying off the Kafirs' souls! They slash their faces and backs saying, "Taste the torment of the Fire!"*

*8:67 A prophet should not take prisoners of war until he has fought and slaughtered in the land. You desire the bounty of the world, but Allah desires the bounty for you of the world to come. Allah is mighty and wise. If there had not been a prior command from Allah, you would have been punished severely for what you had taken. But now enjoy the spoils you have taken, which are lawful and good, but fear Allah. Allah is forgiving and merciful.*

1484 Mohammed left Mecca as a preacher and prophet. He entered Medina with about 150 Muslim converts. After a year in Medina there were about 250-300 Muslims and most of them were very poor. After the battle of Badr, a new Islam emerged. Mohammed rode out of Medina as a politician and general. Islam became an armed political force with a religious motivation, jihad.

The Koran uses the term "fighting in Allah's cause" for jihad.

*2:190 And fight for Allah's cause [jihad] against those who fight you, but do not be the first to attack. Allah does not love the aggressors.*

*2:191 Kill them wherever you find them, and drive them out of whatever place from which they have driven you out for persecution [the Meccans made Mohammed leave] is worse than murder. But do not fight them inside the Holy Mosque unless they attack you there; if they do, then kill them. That is the reward for the Kafirs, but if they give up their ways, Allah is forgiving and merciful.*

*2:193 Fight them until you are no longer persecuted and the religion of Allah reigns absolute, but if they give up, then only fight the evil-doers. The defilement of a sacred month and sacred things are subject to the laws of retaliation. If anyone attacks you, attack him in the same way. Fear Allah and know that He is with those who believe.*

2:195 *Spend your wealth generously for Allah's cause [jihad] and do not use your own hands to contribute to your destruction. Do good, for surely Allah loves those that do good.*

# JIHAD, THE JEWS' EXILE

## CHAPTER 10

*61:11 Believe in Allah and His messenger and fight valiantly for Allah's cause [jihad] with both your wealth and your lives. It would be better for you, if you only knew it!*

### THE AFFAIR OF THE JEWS OF QAYNUQA

1545 There were three tribes of Jews in Medina. The Beni Qaynuqa were gold smiths and lived in a stronghold in their quarters. It is said by Mohammed that they broke the treaty that had been signed when Mohammed came to Medina. How they did this is unclear.

1545 Mohammed assembled the Jews in their market and said: "Oh Jews, be careful that Allah does not bring vengeance upon you like what happened to the Quraysh. Become Muslims. You know that I am the prophet that was sent you. You will find that in your scriptures."

1545 They replied: "Oh Mohammed you seem to think that we are your people. Don't fool yourself. You may have killed and beaten a few merchants of the Quraysh, but we are men of war and real men."

1545 The response of the Koran:

*3:12 Say to the Kafirs, "Soon you will be defeated and thrown into Hell, a wretched home!" Truly, there has been a sign for you in the two armies which met in battle [at the battle of Badr, 300 Muslim defeated 1000 Meccans]. One army fought for Allah's cause, and the other army was a group of Kafirs, and the Kafirs saw with their own eyes that their enemy was twice its actual size. Allah gives help to whom He pleases. Certainly there is a lesson to be learned in this for those who recognize it.*

1546 Some time later Mohammed besieged the Jews in the their quarters. None of the other two Jewish tribes came to their support. Finally the Jews surrendered and expected to be slaughtered after their capture.

1546 But an Arab ally bound to them by a client relationship approached Mohammed and said, "Oh Mohammed deal kindly with my clients." Mohammed ignored him. The ally repeated the request and again Mohammed ignored him. The ally grabbed Mohammed by the robe and enraged Mohammed who said, "Let me go!" The ally said, "No, you must

deal kindly with my clients. They have protected me and now you would kill them all? I fear these changes.” The response by the Koran:

*5:51 Oh, believers, do not take the Jews or Christians as friends. They are but one another's friends. If any one of you take them for his friends, he surely is one of them. Allah will not guide the evildoers.*

*5:52 You will see those who have a diseased heart race towards them and say, "We fear in case a change of fortune befalls us." Perhaps Allah will bring about some victory or event of His own order. Then they will repent of the thoughts they secretly held in their hearts.*

*5:53 Then the faithful will say, "Are these the men who swore their most solemn oath by Allah that they were surely with you?" Their deeds will be in vain, and they will come to ruin. Oh, you who believe, if any of you desert His religion, Allah will then raise up a people whom He will love and who will be loved by Him. They will be humble towards the faithful and haughty towards the Kafirs. They will strive hard for Allah's cause [jihad], and not fear the blame of any blamer. This is the grace of Allah. He gives to whom He pleases. Allah is all-embracing and all-knowing.*

Mohammed exiled the Jews and took all of their wealth and goods.

## THE RAID TO AL QARADA

1547 Mohammed's victory at Badr and ongoing jihad caused the Quraysh to go a different route to Syria. The Muslims surprised them and the Quraysh managed to escape but Mohammed's men were able to steal all the caravan's goods, including the silver. The stolen goods were delivered to Mohammed in Medina.

## KILL ANY JEW THAT FALLS INTO YOUR POWER

1554 The Apostle of Allah said, "Kill any Jew who falls into your power." Hearing this Muhayyisa fell upon a Jewish merchant who was a business associate and killed him. His brother was not a Muslim and asked him how he could kill a man who had been his friend and partner in many business deals. The Muslim said that if Mohammed had asked him to kill his brother he would have done it immediately. His brother said, "You mean that if Mohammed said to cut off my head you would do it?" "Yes," was the reply. The older brother then said, "By Allah, any religion which brings you to this is marvelous." And he decided then and there to become a Muslim.

# JIHAD, A SETBACK

## CHAPTER 11

*4:14 But those who disobey Allah and His Messenger and go beyond His limits, will be led into the Fire to live forever, and it will be a humiliating torment!*

### THE BATTLE OF UHUD

1555 Back at Mecca those who had lost at the battle of Badr told others, “Men of Quraysh, Mohammed has killed your best men. Give us money so that we may take revenge.” Money was raised, men were hired. An army was put together.

1558 So the Meccans camped near Medina, ready for war. Mohammed marched out with a 1000 men to meet the Meccans at the foot of Mount Uhud.

The battle went against Mohammed, because the Muslim archers disobeyed his commands and ran to get the Meccan’s goods when Meccans retreated. The Meccans regrouped and won the day.

### THE KORAN AND THE BATTLE OF UHUD

Since Allah had sent angels to the previous battle of Badr and the outnumbered Muslims triumphed, how could they fail at Uhud?

1593 Two of the clans of Muslims had doubts about the battle. But Allah was their friend and they did not doubt Islam and went on into the battle because of their belief in Allah and Mohammed.

*3:121 Remember when you [Mohammed] left your home early in the morning to lead the believers to their battle stations [battle of Uhud]? Allah heard and knew all. When two of your brigades showed cowardice, Allah protected them both. Let the faithful put their trust in Allah. Allah made you victorious at Badr when you were the weaker army. Therefore, fear Allah and be grateful to Him. Then you said to the believers, “Is it not enough for you that your Lord helped you by sending down three thousand angels?” Yes! And if you stand firm and fear Allah and you are suddenly attacked by your enemies, Allah will send down five thousand angels to wreak havoc upon them.*

3:126 *Allah intended this to be good news for you so your hearts will know peace. Victory comes from Allah alone, He is mighty and wise so that He might destroy a portion of the Kafirs, humiliate them, and keep them from their purpose. It is none of your concern whether He forgives them or punishes them for, truly, they are evil-doers. All that is in the heaven and earth belongs to Allah. He will forgive whom He pleases and punish whom He pleases. Allah is forgiving and merciful.*

1595 The reason for the loss was that the archers did not hold their ground, When they saw that the Meccans were cut off from their camp, they ran to get the spoils of war. Greed caused them to disobey Mohammed. So they should always obey Mohammed, he speaks for the Lord of all. Those who did not follow orders should ask for forgiveness. If they will see that it was their fault and be remorseful they can still get their reward of heaven.

1597 The reason that Allah let the Meccans win was to test the Muslims. Now they will know their true selves. Are they fair weather friends of Mohammed or can they see their faults? If they obey Mohammed, then they can become true Muslims. A true Muslim never loses his morale, never falls into despair.

1596 If you have been wounded or suffered losses in the battle, don't forget that the Kafirs have also suffered.

3:140 *If you have been wounded [Muslims lost the battle of Uhud], be certain that the same has already befallen your enemies. We bring misfortune to mankind in turns so that Allah can discern who are the true believers, and so that We may select martyrs from among you. Allah does not love those who do evil. It is also Allah's purpose to test the believers and to destroy the Kafirs.*

1596 The Muslims must realize that Allah will purify them through tests such as the one they have just had. Those of true faith will not be discouraged.

3:142 *Did you think that you would be permitted into Paradise before Allah tested you to see who would fight for His cause [jihad] and endure until the end? You used to wish for death before you saw it, but now that you have seen it with your own eyes, you turn and run from it. Mohammed is only a messenger, and many messengers have come before him. If he died or was killed, would you turn your backs on the*

*faith? But those who do in fact turn their backs will not hurt Allah in the least. And Allah will surely reward those who serve Him with gratitude.*

*3:145 No soul will ever die unless it is Allah's will. The length of each life is predetermined according to the Scriptures. Those who wish to receive their reward in this world will receive it, and those who wish to receive their reward in the world to come will also receive it. And We will undoubtedly reward those who serve Us with gratitude.*

1599 Do not think that the jihad is over. Soon Islam will bring terror to the Kafirs.

*3:149 Believers! If you follow the Kafirs, they will cause you to reject the faith and lead you to eternal damnation. But Allah is your protector and the best of helpers. We will strike terror into the hearts of the Kafirs because they worship others besides Allah, which He gave them no permission to do. Their home will be the Fire, a terrible resting place for the evil-doers.*

1599 Your slaughter of the Kafirs went well and you were about to wipe the Kafirs off the face of the earth, thanks to Allah. But then you disobeyed Mohammed.

*3:152 Allah fulfilled His covenant with you [Mohammed] when He allowed you to destroy your enemies [at the battle of Badr]. And then later, when you [the Muslims at Uhud] lost your courage, arguments broke out among you [the Muslims disobeyed orders and broke ranks to run and get the exposed spoils of the Meccans] and you sinned after you had come so close to what you wanted [spoils of war]. Some of you wish for the desires of this world and some of you for the world to come. Therefore, He caused you to be defeated so that you might be tested. Now He has forgiven you for Allah shows grace to the believers.*

*3:153 Remember when you [at Uhud the Muslims broke and fled] ran up the hill in cowardice and paid no attention to anyone and the messenger was behind you calling you back to the battle? Allah rewarded you with trouble for the trouble you caused Him so that you would not grieve for the spoils you lost or for what happened to you. Allah knows all that you do.*

1601 After the battle some were at ease, but others were in a state of anxiety because they did not trust Allah. The hypocrites divorced

themselves from the decision and blamed others for failure. If they had had their way then everyone would have been safe.

*3:154 Then, after the trouble Allah sent down upon you, He sent down calmness to wash over some of you. Some were overtaken by sleep, and others lay awake, stirred by their own passions, ignorantly thinking unjust thoughts about Allah. And they ask, "What do we gain by this affair?" Say: Truly the affair is entirely in Allah's hands. They hide in their hearts that which they do not want to tell you. They speak out saying, "If we had any say in this affair then none of us would have been killed here." Say: If you had stayed at home, those of you who were destined to be killed would have died regardless. This has taken place so that Allah might test your faith and see what is in your hearts. Allah knows the deepest secrets of every heart. Those of you who fled in cowardice on the day the two armies met in battle must have been tricked by Satan because of some evil you have done. But now Allah has forgiven you for Allah is forgiving and gracious.*

Those who die in jihad will be rewarded by Allah.

*3:156 Believers! Do not follow the Kafirs' example when they say about their brothers who have been killed in a foreign country or in battle, "If only they had stayed at home they would not have died or have been killed!" Allah will make them regret what they have said. Allah is the giver of both life and death; Allah knows all that you do.*

*3:157 The forgiveness and mercy they, who die or are killed for Allah's cause, will receive from Allah will be far better than anything they could have gained. If you die or are killed, then surely you will all be gathered before Allah.*

1603 The Muslim's loss was a test that was brought on by their decisions.

*3:165 And when disaster [battle of Uhud] befell you, although it brought destruction twice as great to the Kafirs, you said, "Why is this happening to us?" Say to them, "You have brought this upon yourselves for Allah controls all things. The destruction which befell you the day the two armies met in battle was Allah's will so He would recognize who were the true believers and who were the hypocrites." And when they were told, "Come and fight for Allah's cause [jihad] and drive your*



*enemies back,” they replied, “If we knew how to fight, then we would have followed you.”*

*3:168 Some of them were closer to unbelief than faith that day. What they said with their mouths was not what was in their hearts, but Allah knew what they were hiding in their hearts. It was these who said, while sitting at home, of their brothers, “If only they had listened to us, then they would not have been killed.” Say: Try to avert your death if what you say is true!*

*3:169 Never believe that those who have been killed for Allah’s cause [jihad] are dead. No, they are alive with their Lord and receive rich provisions. They rejoice in the bounty Allah gives them and are joyful for those left behind who have yet to join them that they will have nothing fear or regret. They are filled with joy for Allah’s grace and blessings. Allah will not fail to reward the faithful.*

*3:172 As for those who answered the call of Allah and His messenger after they were defeated [battle of Uhud], those of them who do good works and fear Allah will be richly rewarded. They are the ones who when it was said to them, “Your enemies are gathering vast armies against you, so fear them,” it only increased their faith and they said, “Allah’s help is enough for us. He is the most excellent protector.” It was in this manner that they earned Allah’s grace and blessings, and no harm came to them. And they worked to please Allah for Allah is full of boundless grace.*

1606 The success that the Kafirs are experiencing is temporary. They will grow in their evil and they will be punished. Allah will not leave the believers in this state. But this trial will separate the weak from the strong. Those who have wealth should spend it on Allah’s cause.

*3:175 It is only Satan who causes you to fear his followers [the leaders of the Meccans]. Do not fear them; fear Me if you are truly believers. Do not be distressed for those who turn away from the faith for Allah is not hurt by them. Allah will refuse them any part of the world to come. Severe torment awaits them. Those who trade their faith for unbelief will do no harm to Allah, and they will receive a painful punishment.*

*3:178 Do not let the Kafirs think that we lengthen their days for their own good. We give them time only hoping that they will commit more serious sins. They will receive a shameful punishment.*

## ASSASSINATION AS JIHAD

After Uhud, several Arabian tribes allied themselves under the leadership of Sufyan Ibn Khalid. Mohammed dispatched an assassin to kill him, for without his leadership the coalition would fall apart. So the assassin, killed Sufyan, cut off his head and went back to Medina.

Abdullah presented Mohammed with the head of his enemy. Mohammed was gratified and presented him with his walking stick. He said, "This is a token between you and me on the day of resurrection. Very few will have such to lean on in that day." Abdullah attached it to his sword scabbard.

# JIHAD, THE JEWS SUBMIT

## CHAPTER 12

*58:20 Those who oppose Allah and His Messenger will be laid low. Allah has declared, “Surely I will be victorious, along with My messengers.” Truly Allah is strong and mighty.*

### CLEANSING

1653 Mohammed attacked the second of the three Jewish tribes in Medina. He raised his army and went off to put their fortresses under siege. These Jews grew the finest dates in all of Arabia. So Mohammed cut and burned their date palms as they watched. He was accused of breaking Arabic war code.

1653 Now the other Jewish tribe had assured them that they would come to their defense. But no Jew would stand with another Jew against Islam. With no help from their brothers, the besieged Jews cut a deal with the apostle of Allah. They were relieved of their goods and were exiled.

1654 There were some new problems created—the burning of the date palms. The Koran had the answers.

*59:2 It was He who caused the People of the Book [the Jews] to leave their homes and go into the first exile. They did not think they would leave, and they thought that their fortresses could protect them from Allah. But Allah’s wrath reached them from where they did not expect it and cast terror into their hearts, so that they destroyed their homes with their own hands, as well as by the hands of the believers. Take warning from this example, you who have the eyes to see it!*

*59:3 And if Allah had not decreed their exile, surely He would have punished them in this world. And in the world to come they will receive the punishment of the Fire because they had disobeyed Allah and His Messenger. Whoever disobeys Allah, knows that Allah is truly severe in His punishment.*

*59:5 Allah gave you permission to cut down some palm trees and leave others intact so as to shame the wicked [the Jews]. After Allah gave the spoils to His Messenger, you made no move with horses or camels to*

*capture them [the Jews], but Allah gives His messengers power over what He chooses. Allah is all-powerful.*

## THE BATTLE OF THE TRENCH

1669 The Meccans put together an army and set out to attack Mohammed. As Mohammed had many spies in Mecca, so it took no time until he knew of the coming fight and he built a defensive trench.

1677-683 The trench defense frustrated the Meccans. The weather was bad and the allies were distrustful of each other. In terms of actual combat only a handful of men were killed over the twenty-day siege. The Meccans broke camp and went back home. It was a victory for Mohammed.

*33:9 Believers! Remember Allah's grace when your enemies attacked you [the Battle of the Ditch], and We set a mighty wind against them [the Meccans and their allies, the confederates, put Medina under siege], and warriors they could not see, but Allah sees clearly all that you do. [The confederates' poor planning, poor leadership, and bad weather caused them to fail]*

*33:10 When they attacked you from above and from below, your eyes went wild, your hearts leapt up into your throats, and you doubted Allah's strength. There were the believers tried, and they were severely shaken. The hypocrites and the diseased of heart said, "Allah and His Messenger promised us only to deceive us." A group of them said, "People of Medina! It is not safe for you here. Therefore, go back to your city." Then another group said, "Our homes have been left defenseless," although they were not, and they really only wanted to run away.*

*33:14 If the enemy had infiltrated the entire city, the disaffected would have been incited to rebel, and they surely would have done so, but they would have maintained control for only a short while. Before they had pledged to Allah that they would never turn their backs and flee. A pledge to Allah must be answered for. Say: Fleeing will not help you. If you are running away from death or slaughter, even if you do escape, you will only be left to enjoy this world for a short time. Say: Who will keep you from Allah if it is His will to punish you or to show you mercy? Only Allah is your guardian and a helper.*

## THE SOLUTION FOR THE JEWS

1684 After the battle Mohammed put the Jews under siege for twenty-five days. Finally, the Jews offered to submit their fate to a Muslim, Saad, with whom they had had been an ally in the past. His judgment was simple. Kill all the men. Take their property and take the women and children as captives. Mohammed said, "You have given the judgment of Allah."

1690 The captives were taken into Medina. They dug trenches in the market place of Medina. It was a long day, but 800 Jews met their death that day. Mohammed and his twelve year old wife sat and watched the entire day and into the night. The Apostle of Allah had every male Jew killed.

1693 Mohammed took the property, wives and children of the Jews, and divided it up amongst the Muslims. Mohammed took his one fifth of the slaves and sent a Muslim with the female Jewish slaves to a nearby city where the women were sold for pleasure. Mohammed invested the money from the sale of the female slaves for horses and weapons.

1693 There was one last piece of spoils for Mohammed. The most beautiful Jewess was his for pleasure.

1696-7 In the battle of the Trench it was Allah who had won the day. Allah is what gives the Muslim his strength and will. No matter what the Kafirs do Allah will triumph.

*33:25 And Allah drove back the Kafirs in their wrath, and they gained nothing by it. Allah aided the believers in the war, for Allah is strong and mighty. He brought down some of the People of the Book [the Jews] out of their fortresses to aid the confederates and to strike terror into their hearts. Some you killed, and others you took captive. He made you heirs of their land, their homes, and their possessions, and even gave you another land on which you had never before set foot. Allah has power over everything. [800 male Jews were executed, their property taken, and women and children enslaved.]*

The Koran's last words about the Jews:

*5:12 Allah did, of old, make a covenant with the children of Israel, and We appointed twelve leaders among them, and Allah said, "I will be with you if you observe regular prayer, practice regular charity, believe in My messengers and help them, and offer Allah goodly gifts. I will surely wipe away your sins, and I will bring you into Gardens beneath which the rivers flow. Whoever of you does not believe this has gone astray from the even path."*

*5:13 Because they [the Jews] broke their covenant, We have cursed them and have hardened their hearts. They changed the words of Scripture [Islam claims that the Jews removed the references to Mohammed's coming from their Scripture.] from their places and have forgotten part of what they were taught. You will always discover them in deceits, except for a few of them, but forgive them and overlook their misdeeds. Allah loves those who act generously.*

# MOHAMMED'S FAMILY LIFE

## CHAPTER 13

*48:13 We have prepared a blazing Fire for these Kafirs who do not believe in Allah and His Messenger.*

Mohammed had many wives. The Koran goes into detail about his romances.

### THE LIE

When Mohammed went on his missions to attack those who resisted Islam, he took Aisha with him on this trip to fight in Allah's cause in attacking the Mustaliq tribe.

1731 When the tent had been struck and the men in charge loaded the howdah on the camel and off they went without Aisha. When she got back the entire group had moved on. She returned on a camel lead by a young Muslim who had lagged behind the main body and brought her back to Medina.

1732 Tongues began to wag, imaginations worked overtime and gossip spread. Tempers flared and men offered to kill the gossips. In the end the innocence or guilt of Aisha was determined by revelation in the Koran which to this day is the Sharia (Islamic law) about adultery.

*24:1 A sura [chapter] which We have sent down and ordained, and in which We give you clear signs so that you will take warning. The man and woman who commit adultery should each be beaten with a hundred lashes, and do not let your pity for them prevent you from obeying Allah. If you believe in Allah and the Last Day, then allow some of the believers to witness their punishment. An adulterer can only marry an adulteress or an Kafir, and a adulteress cannot marry anyone other than an adulterer or an Kafir. Such marriages are forbidden for believers.*

*24:4 Those who make accusations against honorable women and are unable to produce four witnesses should be given eighty lashes. Thereafter, do not accept their testimony, for they are terrible sinners, except those who repent afterwards and live righteously. Allah is truly forgiving and merciful.*

24:6 *If a husband accuses his wife of adultery but he has no witnesses other than himself, his evidence can be accepted if he swears by Allah four times that he is telling the truth and then calls down Allah's curse upon him if he is lying. If, however, the wife swears by Allah four times that she is innocent and calls Allah's curse down upon herself if she is lying, then she should not be punished.*

24:10 *If it were not for Allah's grace and mercy towards you and that Allah is wise, this would not have been revealed to you.*

24:11 *Truly there is a group among you who spread that lie [During an armed raid, Aisha—Mohammed's favorite wife since their marriage when she was age six—accidentally spent a day alone with a young jihadist. Gossip about what might have happened consumed the Muslims], but do not think of it as a bad thing for you [Aisha was cleared of doubt of sexual infidelity by a revelation in the Koran] for it has proved to be advantageous for you. Every one of them will receive the punishment they have earned. Those who spread the gossip will receive a torturous punishment.*

24:12 *Why did the believing men and women, when they heard this, not think better of their own people and say, "This is an obvious lie"? Why did they not bring four witnesses? And because they could not find any witnesses, they are surely liars in Allah's sight.*

24:14 *If it were not for Allah's goodness towards you and His mercy in this world and the world to come, you would have been severely punished for the lie you spread. You [the Muslims] gossiped about things you knew nothing about. You may have thought it to be only a light matter, but it was a most serious one in Allah's sight. And why, when you heard it, did you not say, "It is not right for us to talk about this. Oh, Allah! This is a serious sin." Allah warns you never to repeat this if you are true believers. Allah makes His signs clear to you, for Allah is all-knowing, wise. Those who take pleasure in spreading foul rumors about the faithful will be severely punished in this world and the world to come. And Allah knows, while you do not.*

Since there were not four witnesses, then there was no adultery and the gossips received eighty lashes.

33:50 *Messenger! We allow you your wives whose dowries you have paid, and the slave-girls Allah has granted you as spoils of war, and the*



*daughters of your paternal and maternal uncles and aunts who fled with you to Medina, and any believing woman who gives herself to the Messenger, if the Messenger wishes to marry her. This is a privilege for you only, not for any other believer. We know what We have commanded the believers concerning wives and slave-girls. We give you this privilege so you will be free from blame. Allah is forgiving and merciful!*  
33:51 *You may turn away any of them that you please, and take to your bed whomever you please, and you will not be blamed for desiring one you had previously set aside for a time. Therefore, it will be easier for you to comfort them and prevent their grief and to be content with what you give each of them. Allah knows what is in your hearts, and Allah is all-knowing and gracious.*

33:52 *It will be unlawful for you to marry more wives after this or to exchange them for other wives, even though you are attracted by their beauty, except slave-girls you own. [Mohammed had nine wives and several slave-girls.] And Allah watches over all things.*

## MARY, THE COPTIC SLAVE OF PLEASURE

Mohammed was given two Coptic (Egyptian Christian) slaves. One he gave to another Muslim, but he kept Mary, fair of skin with curly hair. He did not move her into the harem, but set up an apartment in another part of Medina. Mary gave something in sex that none of his wives could—a male child, Ibrahim. Mohammed doted on him.

The harem was jealous. The wives banded together against Mary and it was a house of anger and coldness. Mohammed withdrew and swore he would not see his wives for a month and lived with Mary.

The Koran:

66:1 *Why, Oh, Messenger, do you forbid yourself that which Allah has made lawful to you? Do you seek to please your wives? [Mohammed was fond of a Coptic (Egyptian Christian) slave named Mary. Hafsa found Mohammed in her room with Mary, a violation of Hafsa's domain. He told a jealous Hafsa that he would stop relations with Mary and then did not. But Hafsa was supposed to be quiet about this matter.] Allah is lenient and merciful. Allah has allowed you release from your oaths, and Allah is your master. He is knowing and wise.*

66:3 *When the Messenger confided a fact to one of his wives, and when she divulged it, [Hafsa had told Aisha (Mohammed's favorite wife)*

*about Mary and the harem became embroiled in jealousy.] Allah informed Mohammed of this, and he told her [Hafsa] part of it and withheld part. When Mohammed told her of it, she said, “Who told you this?” He said, “He who is knowing and wise told me.”*

*66:4 “If you both [Hafsa and Aisha] turn in repentance to Allah, your hearts are already inclined to this, but if you conspire against the Messenger, then know that Allah is his protector, and Gabriel, and every just man among the faithful, and the angels are his helpers besides. Perhaps, if he [Mohammed] divorced you all, Allah would give him better wives than you—Muslims, believers, submissive, devout, penitent, obedient, observant of fasting, widows, and virgins.”*

Ibrahim became a favorite of Mohammed. But when the child was fifteen months old, he fell sick. Mary and her slave sister attended the child during his illness. Mohammed was there at his death and wept mightily. Mohammed was to suffer the Arabic shame of having no living male children to succeed him.

## MARRIAGE TO HIS DAUGHTER-IN-LAW

Mohammed had an adopted son, Zaid, and was attracted to his wife. Zaid divorced her. In Arabia a union between a man and his daughter-in-law was incest and forbidden. But while Mohammed was with Aisha, he had a revelation and said, “Who will go and congratulate Zeinab and tell her that Allah has blessed our marriage?” The maid went right off to tell her of the good news. So Mohammed added another wife to his harem.

*33:4 Allah has not given any man two hearts for one body, nor has He made your wives whom you divorce to be like your mothers, nor has He made your adopted sons like your real sons. [Previous to this verse, an Arab’s adopted children were treated as blood children. This verse relates to verse 37 below.] These are only words you speak with your mouths, but Allah speaks the truth and guides to the right path. Name your adopted sons after their real fathers; this is more just in Allah’s sight.*

*33:36 And it is not the place of a believer, either man or woman, to have a choice in his or her affairs when Allah and His Messenger have decided on a matter. Those who disobey Allah and His Messenger are clearly on the wrong path. And remember when you said to your adopted son*

*[Zaid], the one who had received Allah's favor [converted to Islam], "Keep your wife to yourself and fear Allah," and you hid in your heart what Allah was to reveal, and you feared men [what people would say if he married his daughter-in-law], when it would have been right that you should fear Allah. And when Zaid divorced his wife, We gave her to you as your wife, so it would not be a sin for believers to marry the wives of their adopted sons, after they have divorced them. And Allah's will must be carried out.*

Since Zaid was adopted, he was not really a son, so there was no incest. It was about this time that the veil was imposed. The wives became mothers of the faithful and could not marry after Mohammed died.

*33:55 There is no blame on the Messenger's wives if they speak unveiled with their fathers, sons, brothers, nephews on either their brother's or sister's side, their women, or their slave-girls. Women! Fear Allah, for Allah witnesses all things.*

# MOHAMMED'S FINAL JIHAD

## CHAPTER 14

3:53 *"Our Lord! We believe in what Thou hast revealed, and we follow the Apostle; then write us down among those who bear witness."*

### KHAYBAR

1756 After the treaty of Al Hdaybiya, Mohammed stayed in Medina for about two months before he collected his army and marched to the forts of Khaybar, a community of wealthy Jewish farmers who lived in a village of separate forts about 100 miles from Medina.

1758 Mohammed seized the forts one at a time. Among the captives was a beautiful Jewess named Safiya. Mohammed took her for his sexual pleasure. One of his men had first chosen her for his own slave of pleasure, but Mohammed traded him two of her cousins for Safiya.

1759 On the occasion of Khaybar, Mohammed put forth new orders about the sex with captive women.

1764 Mohammed knew that there was a large treasure hidden somewhere in Khaybar, so he brought forth the Jew who he thought knew the most about it and had him tortured and then beheaded.

1764 At Khaybar Mohammed instituted the first dhimmis. A dhimmi has no civil rights and lives under Sharia law. After the best of the goods were taken from the Jews Mohammed left them to work the land. They gave Mohammed half of their profits as the jizya, the dhimmi tax.

### THE PILGRIMAGE

1789 After returning from Khaybar, Mohammed sent out many raiding parties and expeditions. Seven years after Mohammed moved to Medina and one year after the treaty of Hdaybiya, Mohammed led the Muslims to the Kabah in Mecca. While there he kissed one of the stones of the Kabah and trotted around the Kabah. When he got to the corner with the Black Stone, he walked up and kissed it. He did this for three circuits of the Kabah.

1790 After his three day stay in Mecca, the Quraysh asked him to leave as per the treaty. Mohammed asked to stay and have a wedding feast and he

would invite the Quraysh. The Quraysh said no, please leave. He left.

## THE RAID ON MUTA

1791-3 Mohammed sent an army of 3000 to Muta soon after his return from Mecca. Now Muta was north of Medina, near Syria. When they arrived the Muslims found a large army of the Byzantines. The Muslims were cut to ribbons. The Byzantines were professionals and superior in numbers.

## MECCA CONQUERED

1803 At the treaty of Hudaibiya, it was agreed that the Meccans and Mohammed could make alliances between themselves and other tribes.

1811 As a result of the fighting between a tribe allied with the Meccans and a tribe allied with Mohammed, he marched on Mecca with 10,000 men to punish them.

1819 Mohammed had told his commanders only to kill those who had spoken against Mohammed. The list of those to be killed:

One of Mohammed's secretaries, who had said that when he was recording Mohammed's Koranic revelations sometimes Mohammed let the secretary insert better speech. This caused him to lose faith and he became an apostate.

Two singing girls who had sung satires against Mohammed.

A Muslim tax collector who had become an apostate (left Islam).

A man who had insulted Mohammed.

## THE BATTLE OF HUNAIN

1840 When Mohammed took Mecca, the surrounding Arab tribes saw that if he was not opposed he would be King of Arabia. The Hawazin Arabs decided to oppose him under the leadership of Malik.

1842 He borrowed armor and lances from a wealthy Meccan and then marched out with 12,000 men.

1845 The Muslims almost lost the day.

*9:25 Allah has helped you in many battlefields, and on the day of Hunain, when your great numbers elated you [there were 12,000 Muslims and 4000 Kafirs], but availed you nothing [the Muslims panicked and fled], and the earth, for all its breadth, constrained you, you turned your backs in flight.*

9:26 *Then Allah sent down His tranquility on His Messenger and on the faithful, and He sent down invisible forces and He punished the Kafirs. This is the reward for those without faith. After this, Allah will turn to whom He pleases, for Allah is oft-forgiving and merciful.*

## THE RAID ON TABUK

1894 Mohammed decided to raid the Byzantines. The men began to prepare, but with no enthusiasm due to the heat, it was time for harvest to begin and they remembered the last combat with the Byzantines—they lost badly.

But the Koran had a comment:

9:45 *The only ones who will ask leave of you are those who do not believe in Allah and the Last Day, whose hearts are full of doubts, and who waver in their doubts. If they had intended to go to war, they would have prepared for war. But Allah was opposed to their marching forth and held them back. It was said, “Sit at home with those who sit.” If they had taken the field with you, they would not have added to your strength but would have hurried about among you, stirring up dissension. Some of you would have listened to them. Allah knows the evildoers. They had plotted dissension before and made plots against you again until the truth arrived. Then the decree of Allah prevailed, much to their disgust.*

1902 When they got to Tabuk, the Christians there paid the poll tax, jizya. By paying the poll tax, a per person tax, they would not be attacked, killed or robbed by the Muslims. Those who paid the jizya were under the protection of Islam

## ETERNAL JIHAD

After all the victories, some Muslims said that the days of fighting were over and even began to sell their arms. However, jihad was recognized as the normal state of affairs. Indeed, the Koran prepares the way for this:

9:122 *The faithful should not all go out together to fight. If a part of every troop remained behind, they could instruct themselves in their religion and warn their people when they return to them that they should guard against evil.*

9:123 *Believers, fight the Kafirs who are near you, and let them find you to be tough and hard. Know that Allah is with those who guard against*

evil.

Sura 9, the last chapter of the Koran contains the infamous Sword Verse:

*9:5 When the sacred months [by ancient Arab custom there were four months during which there was to be no violence] are passed, kill the Kafirs wherever you find them. Take them as captives, besiege them, and lie in wait for them with every kind of ambush. If they submit to Islam, observe prayer, and pay the poor tax, then let them go their way. Allah is gracious and merciful.*

1924 The Koran then turns to the issue of the raid on the Byzantines at Tabuk. Muslims must answer the call to jihad. It is an obligation. If the Byzantine raid had been short and had made for easy war spoils, the Muslims would have joined readily. But instead they made excuses. A Muslim's duty is not to avoid fighting with their person and money.

*9:38 Oh, believers, what possessed you that when it was said, "March forth in Allah's cause [jihad]," you cling heavily to the earth? Do you prefer the life of this world to the next? Little is the comfort of this life compared to the one that is to come. Unless you march forth, He will punish you with a grievous penalty, and He will put another in your place. You will not harm Him at all, for Allah has power over everything.*

*9:40 If you do not assist your Messenger, it is no matter for Allah assisted him when the Kafirs drove him out, he [Mohammed] being only one of two men. When the two [Mohammed and Abu Bakr] were in the cave, the Messenger said to his companion, "Do not be distressed, for Allah is with us." Allah sent His tranquility upon him, and strengthened him with hosts you did not see. He humbled the word of those who disbelieved and exalted the word of Allah, for Allah is mighty and wise. March forth both the lightly and heavily armed, and strive hard in Allah's cause [jihad] with your substance and your persons. This is better for you if you know it.*

1926 Those who try to avoid jihad are hypocrites. The Prophet should struggle against them. They are bound for Hell.

*9:73 Oh, Prophet, strive hard against the Kafirs and the hypocrites, and be firm with them. Hell will be their dwelling place: A wretched journey.*

## A SUMMARY OF MOHAMMED'S ARMED EVENTS

1973 In a nine year period Mohammed personally attended 27 raids. There were 38 other battles and expeditions. This is a total of 65 armed events, not including assassinations and executions, for an average of one violent event every six weeks. He died without an enemy left standing.



# CHRISTIANS AND JEWS

## CHAPTER 15

*24:51 But when Allah and His Messenger call the true believers to judge between them, their response is, "We have heard, and we obey."*

### THE FINAL STATE OF CHRISTIANS AND JEWS

When Mohammed first started preaching in Mecca, his religion was Arabian. Then Allah became identified with Jehovah and Jewish elements were introduced. When Mohammed moved to Medina, he argued with the Jews when they denied his status as a prophet in the Judaic line. He then annihilated the Jews and makes no more connections between Islam and Judaism. In his last statement, Jews and Christians became perpetual second class political citizens, dhimmis (pay the dhimmi tribute, jizya, and are subdued). Only those Christians and Jews who submit to Islam are protected. Islam defines Judaism and Christianity. The real Christians are those who deny the Trinity and accept Mohammed as the final prophet. The real Jews are those who accept Mohammed as the final prophet of their god, Jehovah. Both Christians and Jews must accept that the Koran is the true Scripture and accept that the Old Testament and New Testament are corrupt and in error. The contradictions between the Koran and the New and Old Testament are proof of the corruption of the Kafirs.

All other Jews and Christians follow false religion and are Kafirs.

*9:29 Make war on those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] but do not believe in Allah or in the Last Day. They do not forbid what Allah and His Messenger have forbidden. The Christians and Jews do not follow the religion of truth until they submit and pay the poll tax [jizya], and they are humiliated.*

The Christians have hidden their prophecies that reveal Mohammed would come to fulfill the work of Christ. To believe in the divinity of Christ is to refuse to submit to Islam. Those Christians are Kafirs and infidels. Like the Jews, only those Christians who submit to Islam and become dhimmis who are ruled by the Sharia (Islamic law) are actual Christians. Islam defines all religions. No religion defines itself, except Islam.

5:14 *We made a covenant with those who say, "We are Christians," but they, too, have forgotten a part of what they were taught [Islam claims that the Christians suppressed the prophecies of Jesus that Mohammed would be the final prophet] so We have stirred up animosity and hatred among them that will last until Resurrection Day. In the end, Allah will tell them what they have done.*

5:15 *Oh, people of the Scriptures, Our Messenger has come to you to clear up what you have hidden of those Scriptures and to pass over many things that are now unnecessary. Now you have a new light and a clear Book from Allah. He will use it to guide whoever seeks to follow His good pleasure to paths of peace. He will bring them out of the darkness to the light, and, by his decree, will guide them to the straight path.*

5:17 *Surely they are Kafirs who say, "Allah is the Messiah, son of Mary." Say: Who has any power against Allah if He chose to destroy the Messiah, son of Mary, his mother, and all who are on the earth together? Allah's is the sovereignty of the heavens and of the earth and of all that is between them. He creates what He will, and Allah has power over all things.*

5:72 *The Kafirs say, "Jesus is the Messiah, Son of Mary," for the Messiah said, "Oh, Children of Israel, worship Allah, my Lord and your Lord." Whoever will join other gods with Allah, He will forbid him in the Garden, and his abode will be the Fire. The wicked will have no helpers. They surely blaspheme who say, "Allah is the third of three [the Trinity]," for there is no god except one Allah, and if they do not refrain from what they say, a grievous penalty will fall on those who disbelieve. Will they not turn to Allah and ask His forgiveness? For Allah is forgiving and merciful.*

5:75 *The Messiah, Son of Mary, is but a messenger. Other messengers have passed away before him, and his mother was a saintly woman; they both ate food. See how Allah makes His signs clear to them; then see how they turn from the truth. Say: Will you worship, beside Allah, that which can neither hurt nor help you? Allah hears and knows all things.*

# THE SHARIA

## CHAPTER 16

*4:170 People! The Messenger has come to you with truth from your Lord. If you believe, it will be better for you.*

The Sharia is the law of Islam that is based upon the Koran, the Hadith and the Sira. It is the political aim of Islam to replace all legal codes and constitutions (which are man-made) with the Sharia, which comes from Allah. Most of the Sharia is based on the Sunna (examples) of Mohammed. But here are some of the verses that show how the Sharia is formed.

### MARRIAGE/DIVORCE/SEX

Mohammed repeated the points in this verse about women in his last speech at Mecca.

*4:34 Allah has made men superior to women because men spend their wealth to support them. Therefore, virtuous women are obedient, and they are to guard their unseen parts as Allah has guarded them. As for women whom you fear will rebel, admonish them first, and then send them to a separate bed, and then beat them. But if they are disobedient after that, then do nothing further; surely Allah is exalted and great!*

*4:35 If you fear a breach between a man and wife, then send a judge from his family, and a judge from her family. If they both want to come to a reconciliation, Allah will bring them back together. Truly Allah is all-knowing and wise!*

*24:30 Tell the men who are believers that they should look away from that which tempts them and control their lustful desires. Therefore, they will be more pure. Allah is well aware of all they do. And tell the women who are believers that they should lower their eyes and guard their purity, and they should not display their beauty and adornments except that which is normally shown. They should cover their breasts with their veils and only show their adornments to their husband, father-in-law, sons, step-sons, brothers, nephews, or their female servants, eunuch slaves, and children who are innocent and do not notice a woman's nakedness. And do not let them stamp their feet so as to reveal their hidden adornments [ankle bracelets]. Believers, all of you turn to Allah and repent so that it will go well for you.*

24:32 *And marry those among you who are single, or an honorable male or female servant. And if they are poor, then Allah will give them riches from His own bounty. Allah is bountiful and all-knowing. And for those who cannot afford to marry, let them stay pure until Allah fulfills their needs from His bounty. In regard to your slaves who wish to buy their freedom, grant it if you see there is good in them, and give them a part of the wealth that Allah has given you. Do not force your female slaves into prostitution just to gain the wealth of this world if they wish to remain pure. Yet if they are forced to do so, then truly Allah will be merciful.*

2:221 *You will not marry pagan women unless they accept the faith. A slave girl who believes is better than an idolatress, although the idolatress may please you more. Do not give your daughters away in marriage to Kafirs until they believe for a slave who is a believer is better than an idolater, though the idolater may please you more. These lure you to the Fire, but Allah calls you to Paradise and forgiveness by His will. He makes His signs clear to mankind so that they may remember.*

This next verse is the basis for sexual relations between a man and his wife.

2:223 *Your women are your plowed fields: go into your fields when you like, but do some good deed beforehand and fear Allah. Keep in mind that you will meet Him. Give good news to the believers.*

4:15 *If any of your women are guilty of adultery or fornication, then bring in four of you as witnesses against them. If they admit their guilt, then shut them up in their houses until they die or until Allah makes some other way for them. If two of your men are guilty of an indecent act [homosexuality], punish both of them. If they ask for forgiveness and change their ways, then leave them alone, for Allah is forgiving and merciful!*

4:17 *Allah will forgive those who sin unknowingly and then turn away and repent soon thereafter; Allah will show them mercy, for Allah is knowing and wise! But as for those who do evil, and then when they are about to die say, "Now I truly turn to Allah!" or those who die as Kafirs, they will not be forgiven, and a painful punishment is prepared for them.*

4:19 *Believers! It is not allowed for you to inherit the wives of your deceased family members against their will, or to prevent the wives from re-marrying in order to take away part of the dowry you have given them unless they are guilty of flagrant indecency. Treat them kindly for if you hate them, it may be that you hate that in which Allah has placed abundant goodness.*

4:20 *If you want to exchange one wife for another, do not take anything away from the dowry you have given her. Would you take it by slandering her and doing her obvious wrong? How could you take it back when you have slept with one another and entered into a firm covenant?*

## LEGAL

5:38 *As to the thieves, whether men or women, cut off their hands in payment for their deeds. This is a penalty by way of warning from Allah Himself. Allah is mighty and wise. But whoever repents after his wickedness, and makes amends, Allah will turn to him, for Allah is forgiving and merciful. Do you not know that the sovereignty of the heavens and of the earth is Allah's? He punishes whom He will and forgives whom He will. Allah has power over all things.*

2:178 *Believers! Retaliation is prescribed for you in the matter of murder: the free man for the free man, a slave for a slave, a female for a female. If the brother of the slain gives a measure of forgiveness, then grant him any sensible request, and compensate him with a generous payment [blood money]. This is a merciful indulgence from your Lord. He who sins after having been pardoned will suffer a terrible fate. And there is life for you in the law of retaliation, men of understanding, so that you will protect yourselves against evil.*

2:180 *It is ordered that when you are on the verge of death that you dispense your possessions equally to parents and near relatives. This is the duty of the Allah-fearing. One who hears the will and then changes it will be guilty, for Allah is all-hearing and all-knowing. But if anyone fears an error or partiality on the part of the testator and brings about an agreement among the parties, then he is not to blame. Allah is forgiving and merciful.*

4:92 *A believer should never kill a Muslim unless an accident occurs. Whoever kills a fellow Muslim by accident must free one of his believing slaves and pay blood-money to the victim's family unless they give it to charity. If the victim was a believer from a people at war with you, then freeing a believing slave is enough. But if the victim was from a people with whom you have an alliance, then his family should be paid blood-money and a believing slave must be set free. For those who cannot afford to do this, they must fast for two months straight. This is the penance commanded by Allah. Allah is all-knowing and wise!*

4:93 *For those who intentionally kill another Muslim, Hell will be their punishment, where they will live forever. The wrath of Allah will be upon them, He will curse them, and they will receive terrible torture.*

# COMMENTS

## CHAPTER 17

### THE STORY OF THE KORAN

When Mohammed's life is woven back into the Koran, the Koran is transformed. It starts with prayers and praise to the Creator and ends in a political triumph over all enemies, then and now.

The Koran of Mecca is generally religious with one theme: obey the prophets of Allah. Obey Mohammed or burn in Hell. The Koran of Medina changes the message to: obey Mohammed or suffer destruction in this life, jihad. Harming Kafirs is a political act. This is a political message.

Contradiction is at the core of the Koran, what is said at one time can be contradicted at a later time.

The Koran is highly derivative. Judgment day, Paradise, Hell, Moses, Noah and the other familiars from Christianity and Judaism stand out. Images and concepts from Zoroastrianism are used. The odd versions of Christianity and Judaism are found in vanished heretical Arab churches and Jewish commentaries. Old Arab tales are reworked to explain why there were abandoned cities in Arabia. The only new idea in the Koran is that Mohammed is prophet of Allah, all the world is to imitate him and that if you do not, you can be harmed. The horizon of the Koran goes no farther than Mohammed's world. It claims to be a universal text, but it is very provincial.

### LOGIC

The Koran advances a logical system. Truth is determined by revelation. No fact or argument may refute the Koran. Logical persuasion is based upon repetition and continued assertion. Another part of the persuasion is personal attacks against those who resist Islam. The Koran advances its argument through threats against specific people and groups. If persuasion fails, then force may be used to settle the logical or political argument.

Another aspect of Koranic logic is the use of name calling and personal insults to advance the truth. The Koran, with its poetical language and repeated threats and physical violence, bases its logic on emotions. Although its intellectual truth can be contradictory, the contradictions do not need to be resolved. Understanding apparent contradictions is a key to understanding Islamic logic. In the Koran, a contradiction does not prove an argument to be false. What appears to be logical contradictions are statements of duality that

offer two true choices, depending upon the circumstances. This is a dualistic logic.

## DUALITY

The constant theme of the Koran is the division between those who believe Mohammed, and those who don't. This sacred division is dualism; Kafirs are not fully human and fall under a separate moral code. The dualistic separation is in politics, culture and religion. This duality is carried further by two different approaches to the Kafir in the Koran of Mecca and the Koran of Medina.

Some verses of the Koran contradict each other, but the text states a principle for resolving the contradictions. The later verse abrogates (nullifies) the earlier verse. However, since the entire Koran comes from Allah, then all verses are true, and no verse is actually false. The later, contradictory verse is merely stronger than the earlier, weaker verse. In practice, both sides of a contradiction can be true—logical duality.

## ETHICS

There is no Golden Rule in the Koran. Since the ethical system of the Koran is dualistic, there cannot be a Golden Rule. How a person is treated depends upon his being a believer or an Kafir. There is one set of ethics for the believer and another set of ethics for the Kafir. Deceit, violence and force are acceptable against the Kafirs who resist the logic of the Koran. Believers are to be treated as brothers and sisters. Good is what advances Islam. Evil is whatever resists Islam.

## POLITICS

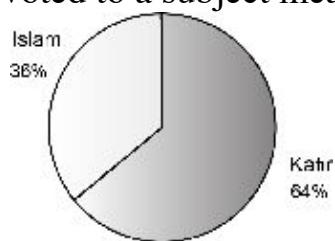
The story of the Koran culminates in the dominance of Political Islam. The Koran teaches that Islam is the perfect political system and is destined to rule the entire world. The governments and constitutions of the world must all submit to Political Islam. If the political systems of the Kafirs do not submit, then force, jihad, may be used. All jihad is defensive, since refusing to submit to Islam is an offense against Allah. All Muslims must support the political action of jihad. This may take several forms—fighting, proselytizing or contributing money.

The basis of the Islamic dualistic legal code, the Sharia, is found in the Koran.

## STATISTICS AND THE KORAN



One way to measure how important anything is is to notice how many resources are devoted to it. The simple act of counting how many words are devoted to a subject measures the importance of the subject.



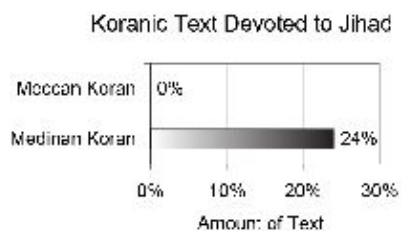
Amount of Kafir Text in Koran

The Koran devotes 64% of the text to the Kafir<sup>[1]</sup>. The part of Islam that deals with the “outsider”, the Kafir, is defined as Political Islam. Since so much of the Koran is about the Kafir, the statistical conclusion is that Islam is primarily a political system, not a religious system.

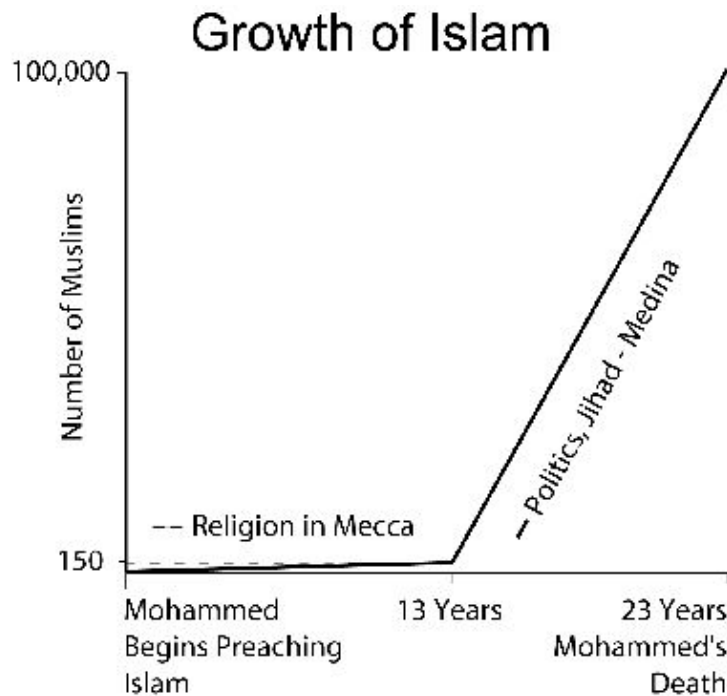
<sup>[1]</sup><http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/AmtTxtDevotedKafir.html>

The violence of the Meccan Koran is insults and torture in Hell after death. In Medina the Koran turns to the sword<sup>[1]</sup>.

<sup>[1]</sup>[http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Percentage\\_of\\_Triology\\_Text\\_Devoted\\_to\\_Jihad.html](http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Percentage_of_Triology_Text_Devoted_to_Jihad.html)



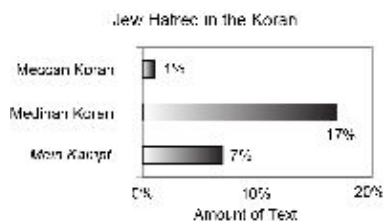
Mohammed preached the religion of Islam for 13 years in Mecca and garnered 150 followers. He was forced to move to Medina and became a politician and warrior. During the last 9 years of his life, he was involved in an event of violence every 6 weeks. When he died every Arab in his sphere was a Muslim. Mohammed succeeded through politics, not religion. Using data from the Sira and history it is possible to draw a graph of the growth of Islam.



There are two distinct growth processes—religious and political. Teaching and religion grew at a rate of about 12 new Muslims per year. Politics and jihad grew at a rate of 10,000 new Muslims per year, an enormous increase. If Mohammed had continued with preaching the religion we can extrapolate that there would have been fewer than 300 Muslims when he died.

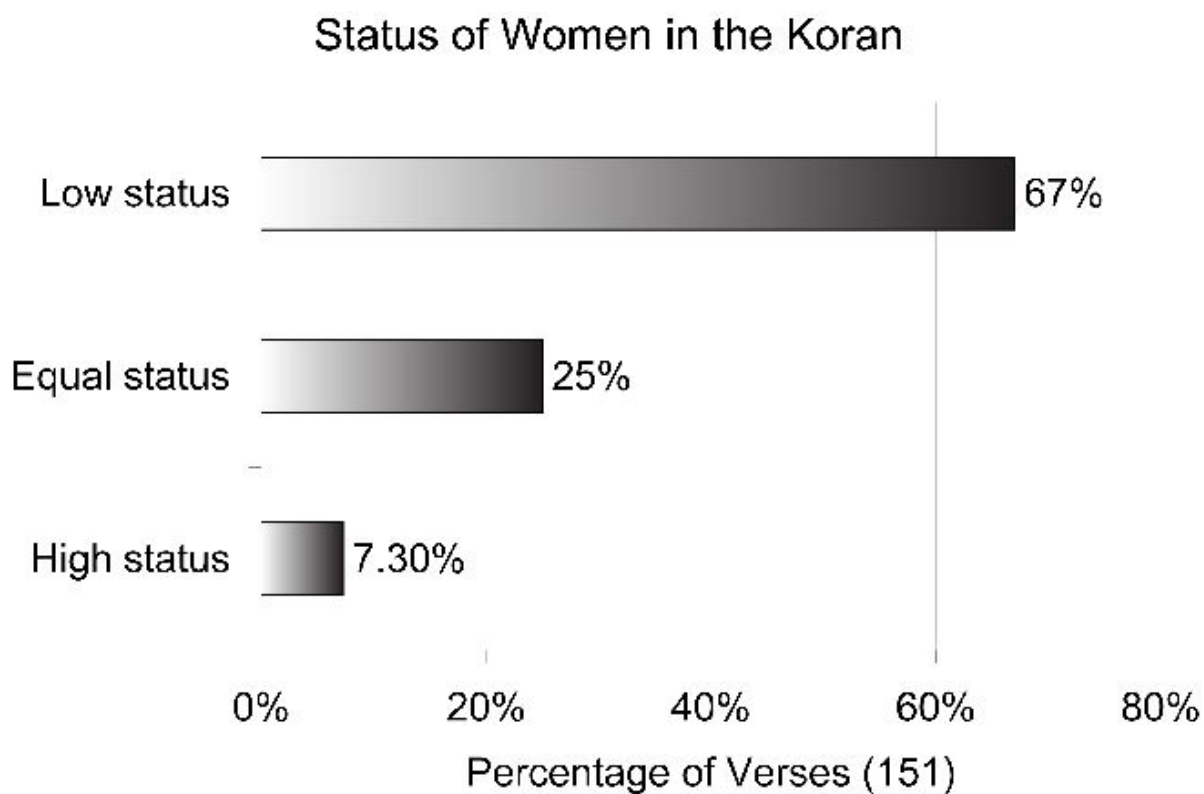
The Koran of Mecca has few negative verses about the Jews, but in Medina the Koran is vicious about the Jews<sup>[1]</sup>. The Koran of Medina has more Jew hatred than Hitler's *Mein Kampf*.

<sup>[1]</sup>[http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Amt\\_anti-Jew\\_Text.html](http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Amt_anti-Jew_Text.html)



The Koran's treatment of women is of interest<sup>[1]</sup>. This chart was prepared by collecting all of the verses that include any mention of women. These are then sorted into neutral, low status, high status and equal status. The neutral verses are not included in the study. The high status is given to mothers. The equal status occurs on Judgment day when men and women will be judged on the basis of their deeds. However, a woman will be judged on how well she obeyed her husband and was grateful to him.

<sup>[1]</sup>[http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Womans\\_Status\\_in\\_the\\_Koran.html](http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Womans_Status_in_the_Koran.html)



#### THIS BOOK

This Kafir-centric book is based upon critical thought and the source texts of Islam: Koran and Sira. The Foundational school holds that it is impossible to understand Islam without understanding the Koran and the Sunna. To know Islam, know Mohammed and Allah.

#### FOR MORE INFORMATION

Visit: [www.politicalislam.com](http://www.politicalislam.com)



**BILL WARNER, PHD**

# **SHARIA**

**LAW FOR NON-MUSLIMS**

**CSPII**

**LEVEL 1**

SHARIA LAW  
FOR THE NON-MUSLIM

CENTER FOR THE STUDY  
OF POLITICAL ISLAM

BILL WARNER

SHARIA LAW FOR THE NON-MUSLIM

BILL WARNER

COPYRIGHT © 2010 CSPI, LLC

ISBN 0-9795794-8-1  
ISBN13 978-0-9795794-8-6  
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED  
V8.31.10

PUBLISHED BY CSPI, LLC  
[WWW.CSPIPUBLISHING.COM](http://WWW.CSPIPUBLISHING.COM)

PRINTED IN THE USA



# INTRODUCTION

## CHAPTER 1

### SHARIA IN EUROPE TODAY

When you study Islam in Europe today, you are seeing America in 20 years. Why? The actions by Muslims in Europe are based on Sharia law, the same Sharia law that is beginning to be implemented in America today.

- There are times when traffic cannot move in London streets as Muslims commandeer the streets to pray—a political result based on Sharia law.
- Entire areas of Europe are no-go zones for non-Muslims, this includes the police. These are Islamic enclaves where only Muslims live. The Muslim-only policy is based on Sharia.
- In England an Anglican bishop calls for the rule of Islamic law for Muslims. The bishop is obeying Sharia law.
- In the schools only Islamic approved texts can be used; this is based on Sharia law.
- Christians may not speak to Muslims about Christianity nor may Christians hand out literature. This is a political result based on Sharia law enforced by British courts.
- Rape by Muslims is so prevalent in parts of Sweden that Sweden has forbidden the police from collecting any data in the rape investigation that would point to Islam. Rape is part of Islamic doctrine as applied to non-Muslim women.
- In London, mass demonstrations by Muslims call for the end of British law and Sharia law to rule all people, regardless of religion. This political action is based on Sharia.
- In some English hospitals during Ramadan fast (an Islamic religious event), non-Muslims cannot eat where a Muslim can see them. The submission of non-Muslims to Islamic preferences is based on Sharia law.



- At British hospitals, Muslim women are treated only as Sharia law demands.

## SHARIA IN AMERICA TODAY

Here are current and historical events in America that are driven by Sharia law:

- On September 11, 2001 jihadists attacked and destroyed the World Trade Center in New York. This atrocity was in compliance to the doctrine of jihad found in the Sharia law. The attack was a political action motivated by a religious mandate for endless jihad.
- Textbooks in America must be approved by Islamic councils. This is in accordance with Sharia law.
- American employers and schools are met with demands for time and space to do Islamic prayer. These demands are based on Sharia law.
- The American banking system is becoming Islamicized with Sharia financing. Our banking system is becoming Sharia compliant in financial law, but is ignorant about the totality of Sharia law.
- Universities are asked to provide sexually segregated swimming pools and other athletic facilities for Muslim women.
- Hospitals are being sued for not providing Sharia compliant treatment.
- No course at the college level uses critical thinking regarding the history and doctrine of Islam. Under Sharia nothing about Islam may be criticized.
- Muslim charities give money to jihadists (Islamic terrorists), as per Sharia law.
- Muslim foot-baths are being installed in airport facilities, paid for by American tax dollars. This is in accordance with Sharia law.
- American prisons are a stronghold of Islamic proselytizing.
- Workplaces are being made Islamic worship sites through special rooms and time off to pray. This is in accordance to Sharia law.

- Islamic refugees bring all of their wives for welfare and medical treatment to America. American authorities will not act—even when presented with evidence. Polygamy is pure Sharia.
- We are fighting wars in Iraq and Afghanistan to implement constitutions whose first article is the supremacy of Sharia law.

## WHY DO WE NEED TO KNOW SHARIA?

**ISLAMIC SCHOLARS CLAIM:** Islamic law is perfect, universal and eternal. The laws of the United States are temporary, limited and will pass away. It is the duty of every Muslim to obey the laws of Allah, the Sharia. US laws are man-made; while Sharia law is sacred and comes from the only legitimate god, Allah.

**SHARIA:** Sharia is based on the principles found in the Koran and other Islamic religious/political texts. There are no common principles between American law and Sharia.

Under Sharia law:

- There is no freedom of religion
- There is no freedom of speech
- There is no freedom of thought
- There is no freedom of artistic expression
- There is no freedom of the press
- There is no equality of peoples—a non-Muslim, a Kafir, is never equal to a Muslim
- There is no equal protection under Sharia for different classes of people. Justice is dualistic, with one set of laws for Muslim males and different laws for women and non-Muslims.
- There are no equal rights for women
- Women can be beaten
- A non-Muslim cannot bear arms

- There is no democracy, since democracy means that a non-Muslim is equal to a Muslim
- Our Constitution is a man-made document of ignorance, that must submit to Sharia
- Non-Muslims are , third-class citizens
- All governments must be ruled by Sharia law
- Unlike common law, Sharia is not interpretive, nor can it be changed
- There is no Golden Rule

## THE SOLUTION

This book uses a fact-based approach to knowledge based upon analytic or critical thought. When you finish reading, you will know what Sharia law is. More importantly, you will know the basis of Sharia. You will achieve an understanding of Islam that most in the West do not have. Islam will begin to make sense.

## THE THREE VIEWS OF ISLAM

There are three points of view relative to Islam. The point of view depends upon how you think about Mohammed. If you believe Mohammed is the prophet of Allah, then you are a believer. If you don't, you are a nonbeliever. The third viewpoint is that of an apologist for Islam. Apologists do not believe that Mohammed was a prophet, but they are tolerant about Islam without any actual knowledge of Islam.

Here is an example of the three points of view.

In Medina, Mohammed sat all day long beside his 12-year-old wife while they watched as the heads of 800 Jews were removed by sword.<sup>[1]</sup> Their heads were cut off because they had said that Mohammed was not the prophet of Allah. Muslims view these deaths as necessary because denying Mohammed's prophet-hood was, and remains, an offense against Islam. They were beheaded because it is sanctioned by Allah.

Nonbelievers look at this event as proof of the jihadic violence of Islam and as an evil act.

Apologists say that this was an historic event; that all cultures have violence in their past, and no judgment should be passed. They have never actually read any of Islam's foundational texts, but speak authoritatively about Islam.

According to the different points of view, killing the 800 Jews was:

- A tragedy
- A perfect sacred act
- Another historical event. We have done worse.

There is no "right" view of Islam, since the views cannot be reconciled.

This book is written from the nonbeliever point of view. Everything in this book views Islam from the perspective of how Islam affects non-Muslims. This also means that the religion is of little importance. A Muslim cares about the religion of Islam, but all nonbelievers are affected by Islam's political views.

This book discusses Islam as a political system. It does not discuss Muslims or their religion. Muslims are people and vary from one to another. Religion is what one does to go to Paradise and avoid Hell. It is not useful nor necessary to discuss Islam as a religion.

We must talk about Islam in the political realm, because it is a powerful political system.

<sup>[1]</sup> , A. Guillaume, Oxford University Press, 1982, pg. 464.

# WHAT IS SHARIA?

## CHAPTER 2

Sharia law is Islamic law. Sharia is the basis for every demand that Muslims make on our society.

- When schools are asked to give up a room for Islamic prayer, that is asking us to implement Sharia law.
- When a Muslim wears a head scarf, that is in obedience to Sharia law.
- When our newspapers would not publish the Danish Mohammed cartoons, our newspapers were submitting to the demands of Sharia law.
- When demands are made for our hospitals to treat Muslim women in special ways, that is Sharia.
- When our textbooks have to be vetted by Muslim organizations before they are used in our schools, that is in accordance with Sharia law.

The attack on the World Trade Center was perpetrated in adherence to the rules of war, jihad, found in Sharia law. Sharia law is the basis for the religious, political and cultural life of all Muslims.

Sharia law is being implemented more and more in America and yet there is no knowledge about what Sharia actually is since public, private or religious schools do not teach it.

## THE GOOD NEWS

The easiest way to learn about Islam is through Sharia law. Through learning about Sharia you are introduced to the Koran and Mohammed in a practical manner.

When you know Sharia, Islam makes sense. Most people believe that Islam is complicated or even impossible to understand, but when you understand its principles, Islam is very, very logical. It is based on different views of humanity, logic, knowledge, and ethics. Once you understand the principles and logic, you not only can explain what and why something is happening, but you will be able to predict the next step in the process.

## UNDERSTANDING THE REFERENCE NUMBERS

Before you can understand Sharia, you have to learn about three books that are the foundations of Sharia.

Each ruling or law in Sharia is based on a reference in the Koran or the Sunna, the perfect example of Mohammed (found in two texts—Hadith and Sira). Each and every law in Islam must have its origins in the Koran and the Sunna.

We know the Sunna by knowing about the personal details of Mohammed's life. We know how he cleaned his teeth and which shoe he put on first. We know the Sunna because we have the Sira and the Hadith.

You probably think that the Koran is the bible of Islam. Not true. The bible of Islam is the Koran, the Sira and the Hadith; these three texts can be called the Trilogy.

The Koran is a small part, only 14% of the total words, of the doctrine that is Islam. The text devoted to the Sunna (Sira and Hadith) is 86% of the total textual doctrine of Islam. Islam is 14% Allah and 86% Mohammed.

Sharia is nothing more than a condensation and extrapolation of the Koran and the Sunna. Therefore, it is impossible to understand the Sharia without some understanding about the doctrine found in the Koran, Hadith and the Sira. Turn to any page after this chapter and you will find that most of the paragraphs have an index number.

A classic Sharia law text is the *Reliance of the Traveller*, N. Keller, Amana Publications. (Yes, the correct spelling is Traveller with a double l.) It is very authoritative as it is warranted and certified as accurate by five of the greatest Islamic scholars of today. It is a 1,200 page book, written in the fourteenth century, devoted to such subjects as: political control of non-Muslims, prayer, jihad, wills and estates, punishment, court rules, and land use. It covers legalities and theology.

Here is a typical paragraph:

### 08.0 APOSTASY FROM ISLAM

08.1 When a person who has reached puberty and is sane, voluntarily apostatizes from Islam, he deserves to be killed.

[Bukhari 9,83,17] Mohammed: “A Muslim who has admitted that there is no god but Allah and that I am His prophet may not be

*killed except for three reasons: as punishment for murder, for adultery, or for apostasy.”*

The “o8.1” reference is an index number in the Sharia law text, *The Reliance of the Traveller*. The text is divided into divisions—a, b, c, ... This particular law is found in division o; section 8; subsection 1. With the index number, o8.1, you can refer directly to the source, *The Reliance of the Traveller*.

In the example above we not only have the law, apostates (people who leave Islam) should be killed, but we have the supporting doctrine found in a hadith, a sacred text used along with the Koran. A hadith is what Mohammed did or said.

This particular hadith is from *Sahih al-Bukhari*, one of the six canonical hadith collections of Sunni Islam. These prophetic traditions, or hadith, were collected by the Muslim scholar Muhammad ibn Ismail al-Bukhari about 200 years after Mohammed died and compiled during his lifetime. It is the most authoritative of all the collections. Sahih means authentic or correct. Notice the index number—9,83,17. This reference number is like a chapter and verse index so that you can go and read the original. All of the hadith, including Bukhari, can be found on many university Internet sites.

Here is a Sharia law supported by the Koran:

## 09.0 JIHAD

Jihad means war against Kafirs to establish Islam.

*Koran 2:216 You are commanded to fight although you dislike it. You may hate something that is good for you, and love something that is bad for you. Allah knows and you do not.*

Above, we have the Sharia text defining what jihad is and then the foundational reference for the authority is provided. Again, you can verify the accuracy of the Koran verses and the original reference, 09.0, in the *Reliance of the Traveller*.

There is one last type of reference to a supporting document.

## DEALING WITH A REBELLIOUS WIFE

m10.12 When a husband notices signs of rebelliousness...

Ishaq<sup>969</sup> ... Men were to lay injunctions on women lightly for they were prisoners of men and had no control over their persons.

Above we have the usual Sharia reference number, m10.12, which relates to the *Reliance of the Traveller*—the original reference. The Ishaq index number, 969, is a margin note reference that allows you to look in the Sira (Mohammed's biography—*The Life of Muhammad*, A. Guillaume) and verify the reference for yourself.

## BELIEVABLE AND AUTHORITATIVE

This is fact-based knowledge based upon critical thought and analysis. Everything you see here can be independently verified.

This is a very different approach from asking a Muslim or an “expert” about Islam or Sharia. If a Muslim or any expert says something about Islam that disagrees with the Koran or Sunna, then the expert is wrong. If the expert says something that agrees with Koran or Sunna, then the expert is right, although redundant.

Once you know Koran and Sunna, further advice is not required.

## POLITICAL ISLAM

The largest part of the Trilogy is not about how to be a good Muslim. Instead most of the text is devoted to the unbeliever. The Koran devotes 64% of its total words to the unbeliever and the Trilogy, as a whole, devotes 60% of its text to the unbelievers.

Islam is NOT just a religion. It is a complete civilization with a detailed political system, religion and a legal code—the Sharia. Mohammed preached the religion of Islam for 13 years in Mecca and got 150 Arabs to convert to Islam. He went to Medina and became a politician and a warlord. After 2 years in Medina, every Jew was murdered, enslaved, or exiled. He was involved in an event of violence on the average of every 6 weeks for the last 9 years of his life<sup>[1]</sup>. Mohammed died without a single enemy left standing.

This was not a religious process, but a political process. Jihad is political action with a religious motivation. Political Islam is the doctrine that deals with the non-Muslim.

Mohammed did not succeed with his program of religion, but his political process of jihad triumphed. Sharia law is the political



implementation of the Islamic civilization.

The political nature of Islam is what creates the major difference between Sharia and Jewish religious law, *halakha*. Jewish law has nothing to say about non-Jews and explicitly says that the law of the land trumps halakha.

Sharia has a lot to say about Kafirs and how they are to be treated, subjugated and ruled. Sharia claims political supremacy over the Constitution.

There is nothing good for non-Muslims in the Sharia. This is why every unbeliever has a reason to know Sharia law, especially those in politics, policy, regulation and legal matters. Sharia law is about the unbeliever as well as the Muslim. Islam's attitudes and actions about unbelievers are political, not religious.

Even though Sharia violates every principle of our Constitution, it is being implemented today, because Americans are unaware about Sharia or its meaning.

## SHARIA AND INTERPRETATION

When faced with unpleasant verses from the Koran, it is commonly said that the true meaning depends upon how one interprets the text. For over a thousand years, the Sharia has been the official and normative interpretation for all of Islam. Sharia is the Koran and Sunna interpreted by Islam's finest scholars. There is no need to look further for interpretation; that work has been done for a thousand years. New matters in Islam must be evaluated and judged according to Sharia, the final and universal moral code for all humanity until the end of time.

The Sharia is based on the perfect, unchanging Koran and Sunna. The vast majority of Islamic scholars argue that the Sharia is Allah's will in the past and the present. It should be implemented by all peoples as the only sacred law in its present form.

Any change or reform of the Sharia must be based the Koran and the Sunna of Mohammed, just like the classical text.

## TECHNICAL DETAILS

If you read something in this book and want to know more, most paragraphs have an index number. You can look it up.

Koran 1:2 is a reference to the Koran, chapter 1, verse 2.

Ishaq 123 is a reference to Ishaq's Sira, margin note 123.

[Bukhari 1,3,4] is a reference to *Sahih Bukhari*, volume 1, book 3, number 4.

[Muslim 012, 1234] is a reference to *Sahih Muslim*, book 12, number 1234.

<sup>[1]</sup> *The Life of Mohammed*, A. Guillaume, Oxford University press, 1955, page 660.

# WOMEN

## CHAPTER 3

### ISLAMIC SCHOLARS CLAIM:

- Sharia laws concerning women are the rule of law in Islamic families.
- Islam was the first civilization to provide and guarantee women's rights.
- Mohammed gave the world the perfect example of how women are protected in Islam.
- Muslim women are treasured and as treasures must be protected from the evils of the kafir world.
- The rights of Muslim women come from Allah.

THE SHARIA: Sharia law has different laws for different groups of people. Women are one of its special classes.

### WIFE BEATING

Islam's grand vision about women is given in one verse of the Koran:

*Koran 4:34 Allah has made men superior to women because men spend their wealth to support them. Therefore, virtuous women are obedient, and they are to guard their unseen parts as Allah has guarded them. As for women whom you fear will rebel, admonish them first, and then send them to a separate bed, and then beat them. But if they are obedient after that, then do nothing further; surely Allah is exalted and great!*

### THE SHARIA: DEALING WITH A REBELLIOUS WIFE

m10.12 When a husband notices signs of rebelliousness in his wife whether in words as when she answers him coldly when she used to do so politely, or he asks her to come to bed and she refuses, contrary to her usual habit; or whether in acts, as when he finds her averse to him when she was previously kind and cheerful, he warns her in words without keeping from her or hitting her, for it may be that she has an excuse.

The warning could be to tell her, “Fear Allah concerning the rights you owe to me,”

or it could be to explain that rebelliousness nullifies his obligation to support her and give her a turn amongst other wives, or it could be to inform her, “Your obeying me is religiously obligatory”.

If she commits rebelliousness, he keeps from sleeping (having sex) with her and refuses to speak to her, and may hit her, but not in a way that injures her, meaning he may not bruise her, break bones, wound her, or cause blood to flow. It is unlawful to strike another’s face. He may hit her whether she is rebellious only once or whether more than once, though a weaker opinion holds that he may not hit her unless there is repeated rebelliousness.

Ishaq<sup>969</sup> He [Mohammed] also told them men had rights over their wives and women had rights over their husbands. The wives were never to commit adultery or act in a sexual manner toward others. If they did, they were to be put in separate rooms and beaten lightly. If they refrained from what was forbidden, they had the right to food and clothing. Men were to lay injunctions on women lightly for they were prisoners of men and had no control over their persons.

*[Abu Dawud 11, 2142] Mohammed said: A man will not be asked as to why he beat his wife.*

*[Bukhari 7,62,132] The Prophet said, “None of you should flog his wife as he flogs a slave and then have sexual intercourse with her in the last part of the day.” Most of those in Hell will be women.*

## THE DOCTRINE OF WOMEN

There are many ways in which the woman does not have full stature in Sharia law:

022.1 The necessary qualifications for being an Islamic judge are:

(a) to be a male freeman [...]

04.9 The indemnity for the death or injury of a woman is one-half the indemnity paid for a man.

*[Bukhari 3,48,826] Mohammed asked, “Is not the value of a woman’s eye-witness testimony half that of a man’s?” A woman*

*said, "Yes." He said, "That is because a woman's mind is deficient."*

L10.3 They divide the universal share so that the male receives the portion of two females.

*Koran 4:11 It is in this manner that Allah commands you concerning your children: A male should receive a share equal to that of two females, [...]*

This hadith equates camels, slaves and women.

*[Abu Dawud 11, 2155] Mohammed said: If one of you marries a woman or buys a slave, he should say: "O Allah, I ask You for the good in her, and in the disposition You have given her; I take refuge in You from the evil in her, and in the disposition You have given her." When he buys a camel, he should take hold of the top of its hump and say the same kind of thing.*

Women are inferior to men in intelligence and religion.

*[Bukhari 1,6,301] While on his way to pray, Mohammed passed a group of women and he said, "Ladies, give to charities and donate money to the unfortunate, because I have witnessed that most of the people in Hell are women.*

*They asked, "Why is that?"*

*He answered, "You swear too much, and you show no gratitude to your husbands. I have never come across anyone more lacking in intelligence, or ignorant of their religion than women. A careful and intelligent man could be misled by many of you."*

*They responded, "What exactly are we lacking in intelligence or faith?"*

*Mohammed said, "Is it not true that the testimony of one man is the equal to the testimony of two women?"*

*After they affirmed that this was true, Mohammed said, "That illustrates that women are lacking in intelligence. Is it not also true that women may not pray nor fast during their menstrual cycle?" They said that this was also true.*

*Mohammed then said, "That illustrates that women are lacking in their religion."*

A woman's testimony is worth half that of a man.

*2:282 Believers! When you contract a loan for a certain period, write it down, or to be fair, let a scribe write it down. The scribe should not refuse to write as Allah has taught him; therefore, let the scribe record what the debtor dictates being mindful of his duty to Allah and not reducing the amount he owes. If the debtor is ignorant and unable to dictate, let his guardian do so with fairness. Call two men in to witness this, but if two men cannot be found, then call one man and two women whom you see fit to be witnesses. Therefore, if either woman makes an error, the other can correct her [...]*

## FEMALE GENITAL MUTILATION, FEMALE CIRCUMCISION

It is unfortunate that the term circumcision is applied to both the removal of the foreskin of the male and the removal of the clitoris of the woman. There is no comparison.

*[Bukhari 7,72,,779] Mohammed said, "Five practices are characteristics of the ancient prophets: circumcision, shaving the pubic hair, cutting the moustaches short, clipping the nails, and depilating the hair of the armpits."*

This hadith refers to the circumcision of female genitalia. It assumes that both the man and the woman are circumcised.

*[Muslim 003,0684] [...] Abu Musa then said, "When is a bath obligatory?" Aisha responded, "You have asked the right person. Mohammed has said that a bath is obligatory when a man is encompassed by a woman and their circumcised genitalia touch."*

Circumcision is part of the Sharia law. Here is the deceptive translation:

e4.3 Circumcision is obligatory for both men and women. For men it consists of removing the prepuce from the penis, and for women, removing the prepuce of the clitoris (not the clitoris itself, as some mistakenly assert).

However what the Arabic actually says is:

e4.3 Circumcision is obligatory (for every male and female) by cutting off the piece of skin on the glans of the penis of the male, but circumcision of the female is by cutting out the clitoris (this is called Hufaad)."

This deceptive translation obscures the Sharia law. This deception is called *taqiyya*, a form of sacred deception.

At the battle of Badr, we have a reference to the custom of removing the clitoris.

1564 Hamza said, ‘*Come here, you son of a female circumciser.*’ Now his mother was Umm Anmar, *a female circumciser (one who circumcised girls) in Mecca.* Then Hamza smote him and killed him.

## O12.0 THE PENALTY FOR FORNICATION

o12.6 If the penalty is stoning, they are to be stoned, no matter the weather, or if they are ill. A pregnant woman is not stoned until she gives birth and the child does not need to nurse.

*[Muslim 017, 4206] ... There came to Mohammed a woman who said: Allah’s Messenger, I have committed adultery, [...] When she was delivered she came with the child (wrapped) in a rag and said: Here is the child whom I have given birth to. He said: Go away and suckle him until you wean him. When she had weaned him, she came to him with the child who was holding a piece of bread in his hand. She said: Allah’s Apostle, here is he as I have weaned him and he eats food. He entrusted the child to one of the Muslims and then pronounced punishment. And she was put in a ditch up to her chest and he commanded people and they stoned her. ...*

## HONOR KILLING

Honor killing is not directly included in Sharia doctrine. Sharia dictates that a woman is inferior to the male and allows beatings to enforce the rule of the male, but it does not accord honor killing a legal status. However, there is no penalty for killing an adulterer:

o5.4 There is no expiation for killing someone who has left Islam, a highwayman or a convicted married adulterer...

e12.8 ... unworthy (those who may be killed) includes ... convicted married adulterers...

This seems to include equal penalties for both men and women, however, a man has many legal ways to have sex, while the woman is strictly limited to her husband alone. Hence, the woman is much more likely to be killed.

The man rules the woman, and his status in the community depends upon how his women conduct themselves. *Ghira* is sacred jealousy, even Allah has ghira. Ghira is also self-respect and is the basis of honor killings. Notice

that in this hadith Saed's threat to kill a man with his wife is not condemned, but supported. Violence in defense of a Muslim's ghira is pure Islam.

*[Bukhari 8,82,829; Bukhari 9,93,512] Saed bin Ubada said, "If I saw a man with my wife, I would strike him with the blade of my sword." This news reached Mohammed, who then said, "You people are astonished at Saed's ghira (self-respect). By Allah, I have more ghira than he, and Allah has more ghira than I, and because of Allah's ghira, He has made unlawful shameful deeds and sins done in open and in secret. [...]*

Most honor killings come from Islamic societies.



# FAMILY LAW

## CHAPTER 4

**ISLAMIC SCHOLARS CLAIM:** The perfect Islamic family law is sacred law since it is based upon the words of Allah in the glorious Koran and the Sunna of Mohammed. All other laws are man-made and must submit to the will of Allah; therefore, only Sharia law is suitable for Muslims. For Muslims to be ruled by Kafir laws is an abomination.

### THE SHARIA:

m3.13 Guardians are of two types, those who may compel their female charges to marry someone, and those who may not.

m6.10 It is unlawful for a free man to marry more than four women.

m8.2 A guardian may not marry his prepubescent daughter to someone for less than the amount typically received as marriage payment by similar brides.

### ADULTERY

*[Bukhari 3,38,508] Mohammed said, "Unais, confront this man's wife and if she admits committing adultery have her stoned to death."*

*[Bukhari 8,82,803] Ali had a woman stoned to death on a Friday and said, "I have punished her as Mohammed would have."*

m10.4 The husband may forbid his wife to leave the home. But if one of her relatives dies, it is preferable to let her leave to visit them.

m5.0 conjugal rights, the wife's marital obligations

m5.1 It is obligatory for a woman to let her husband have sex with her immediately when:

- (a) he asks her
- (b) at home
- (c) and she can physically endure it

*[Abu Dawud 11, 2138; 2139] Muawiyah said: Apostle of Allah, how should we approach our wives and how should we leave them?*

*He replied: Approach your tilth (tilth is a plowed field, a term for the vagina) when or how you will, ...*

The most important thing that a woman brings to the marriage is her vagina.

*[Bukhari 7,62,81] Mohammed said, "The marriage vow most rightly expected to be obeyed is the husband's right to enjoy the wife's vagina."*

Allah curses the woman who resists sex.

*[Bukhari 7,62,121] Mohammed: "If a woman refuses her husband's request for sex, the angels will curse her through the night."*

From the Sira, we have some more about a husband's rights:

Ishaq 957 Mohammed sent Muadh to Yemen to proselytize. While he was there he was asked what rights a husband has over the wife. He replied to the woman who asked, "If you went home and found your husband's nose running with pus and blood and you sucked it until it was cleaned, you still would not have fulfilled your husband's rights."

## CHILD BRIDES

Mohammed, age 51, proposed marriage to Aisha when she was six years old. Marriage to a child is Sunna.

*[Bukhari 7,62,18] When Mohammed asked Abu Bakr for Aisha's hand in marriage, Abu replied, "But I am your brother." Mohammed said, "You are only my brother in Allah's religion and His Book, so it is lawful for me to marry her."*

# THE KAFIR

## CHAPTER 5

Until now we have looked at the big picture of Sharia and then the position of women in Sharia. We now come to a new subject—the unbeliever or non-Muslim. The word “non-Muslim” is used in the translation of Sharia law, but the actual Arabic word used is “Kafir”. But the word Kafir means far more than non-Muslim. The original meaning of the word was “concealer”, one who conceals the truth of Islam.

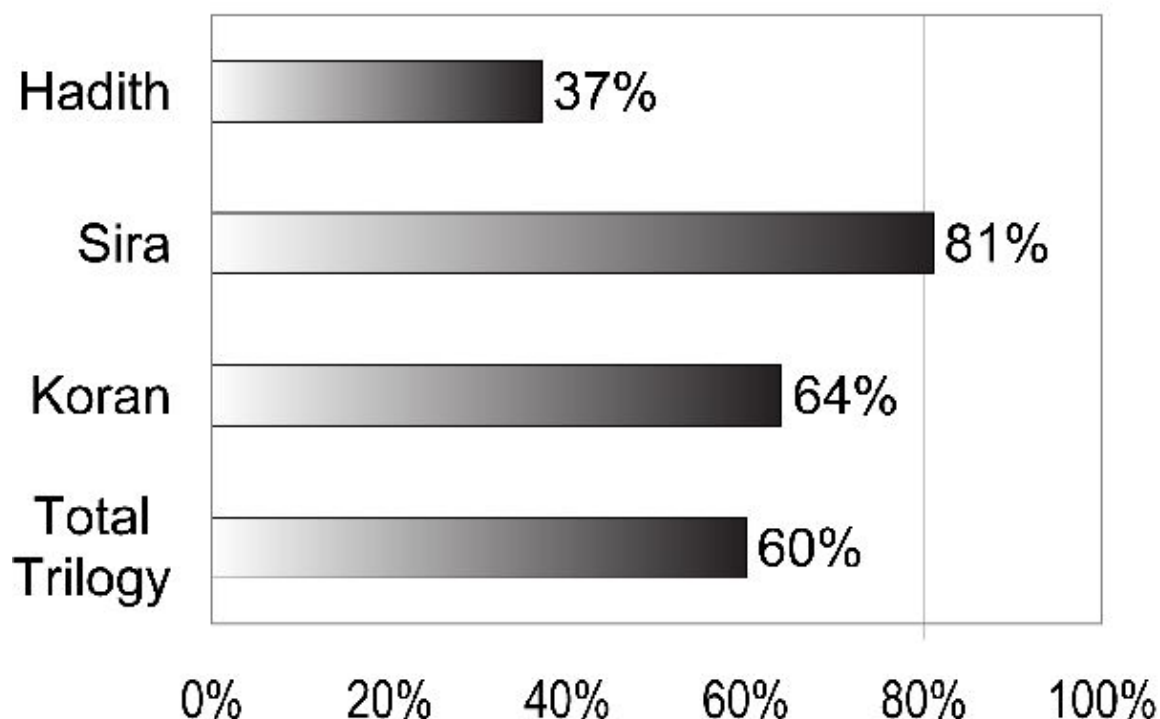
The Koran says that the Kafir may be deceived, plotted against, hated, enslaved, mocked, tortured and worse. The word is usually translated as “unbeliever” but this translation is wrong. The word “unbeliever” is logically and emotionally neutral, whereas, Kafir is the most abusive, prejudiced and hateful word in any language.

There are many religious names for Kafirs: polytheists, idolaters, People of the Book (Christians and Jews), Buddhists, atheists, agnostics, and pagans. Kafir covers them all, because no matter what the religious name is, they can all be treated the same. What Mohammed said and did to polytheists can be done to any other category of Kafir.

Islam devotes a great amount of energy to the Kafir. The majority (64%) of the Koran is devoted to the Kafir, and nearly all of the Sira (81%) deals with Mohammed’s struggle with them. The Hadith (Traditions) devotes 32% of the

text to Kafirs<sup>[1]</sup>. Overall, the Trilogy devotes 60% of its content to the Kafir.

### Amount of Text Devoted to the Kafir



The Sharia does not devote nearly that much to the Kafir since Sharia law is primarily for Muslims. Besides, the Kafir has few rights, so there is little to expound on.

Religious Islam is what Muslims do to go to Paradise and avoid Hell. What Mohammed did to Kafirs was not religious, but political. Political Islam is what is of concern to Kafirs, not the religion. Who cares how a Muslim worships, but every one of us is concerned as to what they do to us and say about us. Political Islam should be of concern to every Kafir.

Here are two Sharia references about Kafirs:

w59.2 [...] And this clarifies the Koranic verses and hadiths about hatred for the sake of Allah and love for the sake of Allah, *Al Walaa wa al Baraa*, being unyielding towards the Kafirs, hard against them, and detesting them, while accepting the destiny of Allah Most High insofar as it is the decree of Allah Mighty and Majestic.

Hatred for the sake of Allah and love for the sake of Allah is called *Al Walaa wa al Baraa*, a fundamental principle of Islamic ethics and Sharia. A Muslim is

to hate what Allah hates and love what Allah loves. Allah hates the Kafir, therefore, a Muslim is to act accordingly.

*40:35 They [Kafirs] who dispute the signs [Koran verses] of Allah without authority having reached them are greatly hated by Allah and the believers [Muslims]. So Allah seals up every arrogant, disdainful heart.*

h8.24 It is not permissible to give *zakat* [charity] to a Kafir, or to someone whom one is obliged to support such as a wife or family member.

Here are a few of the Koran references:

A Kafir can be mocked—

*83:34 On that day the faithful will mock the Kafirs, while they sit on bridal couches and watch them. Should not the Kafirs be paid back for what they did?*

A Kafir can be beheaded—

*47:4 When you encounter the Kafirs on the battlefield, cut off their heads until you have thoroughly defeated them and then take the prisoners and tie them up firmly.*

A Kafir can be plotted against—

*86:15 They plot and scheme against you [Mohammed], and I plot and scheme against them. Therefore, deal calmly with the Kafirs and leave them alone for a while.*

A Kafir can be terrorized—

*8:12 Then your Lord spoke to His angels and said, "I will be with you. Give strength to the believers. I will send terror into the Kafirs' hearts, cut off their heads and even the tips of their fingers!"*

A Muslim is not the friend of a Kafir—

*3:28 Believers should not take Kafirs as friends in preference to other believers. Those who do this will have none of Allah's protection and will only have themselves as guards. Allah warns you to fear Him for all will return to Him.*

A Kafir is evil—

*23:97 And say: Oh my Lord! I seek refuge with You from the suggestions of the evil ones [Kafirs]. And I seek refuge with you, my Lord, from their presence.*

A Kafir is disgraced—

*37:18 Tell them, "Yes! And you [Kafirs] will be disgraced."*

A Kafir is cursed—

*33:60 They [Kafirs] will be cursed, and wherever they are found, they will be seized and murdered. It was Allah's same practice with those who came before them, and you will find no change in Allah's ways.*

## KAFIRS AND PEOPLE OF THE BOOK

Muslims tell Christians and Jews that they are special. They are “People of the Book” and are brothers in the Abrahamic faith. But in Islam you are a Christian, if and only if, you believe that Christ was a man who was a prophet of Allah; there is no Trinity; Jesus was not crucified nor resurrected and that He will return to establish Sharia law. To be a true Jew you must believe that Mohammed is the last in the line of Jewish prophets.

This verse is positive:

*5:77 Say: Oh, People of the Book, do not step out of the bounds of truth in your religion, and do not follow the desires of those who have gone wrong and led many astray. They have themselves gone astray from the even way.*

Islamic doctrine is dualistic, so there is an opposite view as well. Here is the last verse written about the People of the Book (A later verse abrogates or replaces an earlier verse. See page 26.). This is the final word. It calls for Muslims to make war on the People of the Book who do not believe in the religion of truth, Islam.

*9:29 Make war on those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] but do not believe in Allah or in the Last Day. They do not forbid what Allah and His Messenger have forbidden. The Christians and Jews do not follow the religion of truth until they submit and pay the poll tax [jizya] and they are humiliated.*

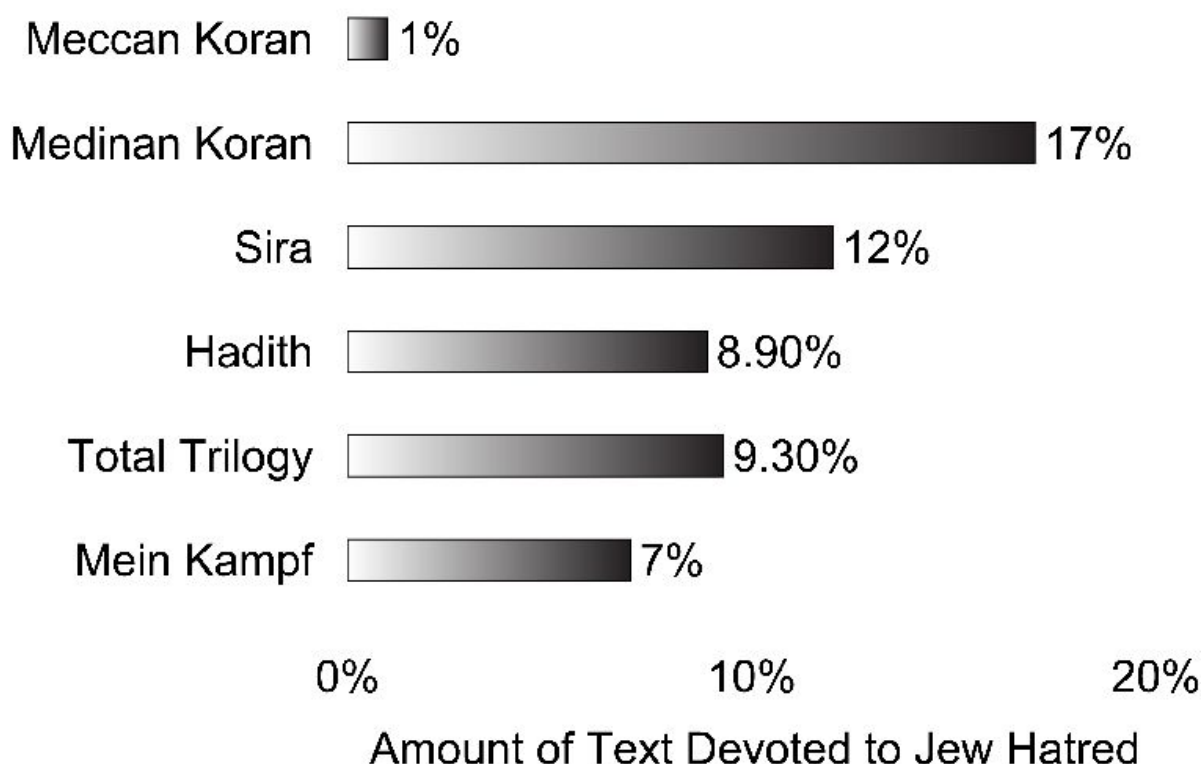
The sentence “They do not forbid...” means that they do not accept Sharia law; “until they submit” means to submit to Sharia law. Christians and Jews who do not accept Mohammed as the final prophet are Kafirs.

Muslims pray five times a day and the opening prayer always includes:

*Koran 1: 7 Not the path of those who anger You [the Jews] nor the path of those who go astray [the Christians].*

The Trilogy spends a lot of time on the Jews. In Mecca the mention is generally favorable. However, in Medina Jews were the enemy of Islam because they denied Mohammed as the final prophet. Here is the data on the Trilogy texts and the Jews<sup>[2]</sup>. Notice that the Trilogy has more Jew hatred than *Mein Kampf*.

## Anti-Jew Text in Trilogy



### LANGUAGE

Since the original Arabic word for unbelievers was Kafir and that is the actual word used in the Koran and Sharia law, that is the word used here for accuracy and precision.

It is very simple: if you don't believe Mohammed and his Koran, you are a Kafir.

<sup>[1]</sup> <http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/AmtTxtDevotedKafir.html>

<sup>[2]</sup> [http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Amt\\_anti-Jew\\_Text.html](http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Amt_anti-Jew_Text.html)

# JIHAD

## CHAPTER 6

Jihad is part of Sharia law.

### FROM THE SHARIA:

#### 09.0 jihad

Jihad means war against Kafirs to establish Islam's Sharia law.

*Koran 2:216 You are commanded to fight although you dislike it. You may hate something that is good for you, and love something that is bad for you. Allah knows and you do not.*

*Koran 4:89 They would have you become Kafirs like them so you will all be the same. Therefore, do not take any of them as friends until they have abandoned their homes to fight for Allah's cause [jihad]. But if they turn back, find them and kill them wherever they are.*

The whole world must submit to Islam; Kafirs are the enemy simply by not being Muslims. Violence and terror are made sacred by the Koran. Peace comes only with submission to Islam.

Political Islam, jihad, is universal and eternal.

*[Muslim 001,0031] Mohammed: "I have been ordered to wage war against mankind until they accept that there is no god but Allah and that they believe I am His prophet and accept all revelations spoken through me. When they do these things I will protect their lives and property unless otherwise justified by Sharia, in which case their fate lies in Allah's hands."*

*[Bukhari 4,52,142] Mohammed: "To battle Kafirs in jihad for even one day is greater than the entire earth and everything on it. A spot in Paradise smaller than your riding crop is greater than the entire earth and everything on it. A day or a night's travel in jihad is greater than the entire world and everything on it."*

#### 09.1 THE OBLIGATORY CHARACTER OF JIHAD

Jihad is a communal obligation. When enough people perform it, it is no longer obligatory upon others.

*Koran 4:95 Believers who stay at home in safety, other than those who are disabled, are not equal to those who fight with their wealth and their lives*



*for Allah's cause [jihad].*

*[Bukhari 4,52,96] Mohammed: "Anyone who arms a jihadist is rewarded just as a fighter would be; anyone who gives proper care to a holy warrior's dependents is rewarded just as a fighter would be."*

## WHO IS OBLIGED TO FIGHT IN JIHAD

09.4 All sane able bodied men who have reached puberty.

## THE OBJECTIVES OF JIHAD

09.8 The caliph (supreme ruler who is both a king and similar to a pope) makes war on the Jews and Christians. First invite them to Islam, then invite them to pay the jizya (tax on Kafirs). If they reject conversion and the jizya, then attack them.

*Koran 9:29 Make war on those who have received the Scriptures [Jews and Christians] but do not believe in Allah or in the Last Day. They do not forbid what Allah and His Messenger have forbidden. The Christians and Jews do not follow the religion of truth until they submit and pay the poll tax [jizya] and they are humiliated.*

09.9 The caliph fights all other peoples [Kafirs] until they become Muslims.

## THE SPOILS OF WAR

010.2 Anyone who kills or incapacitates a Kafir, can take whatever he can.

*[Bukhari 4,53,351] Mohammed: "Allah has made it legal for me to take spoils of war."*

*Koran 8:41 Know that a fifth of all your spoils of war [the traditional cut for the leader was a fourth] belong to Allah, to His messenger, to the messenger's family, the orphans, and needy travelers.*

Since jihad can be done by Muslims against any Kafir, with the proper motivation, theft from a Kafir is jihad.

## DYING IN JIHAD—MARTYRDOM

A Muslim martyr is one who kills for Allah and Islam. But his killing must be pure and devoted only to Allah. If his motivation is pure, then the jihadist will achieve Paradise or be able to take the wealth of the Kafir.

*[Bukhari 1,2,35] Mohammed said, "The man who joins jihad, compelled by nothing except sincere belief in Allah and His Prophets, and survives, will be rewarded by Allah either in the afterlife or with*

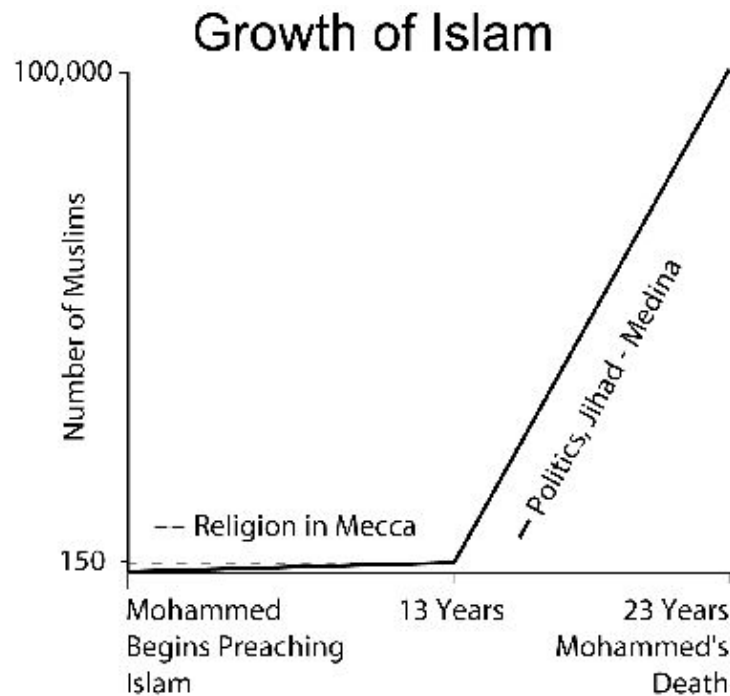
*the spoils of war. If he is killed in battle and dies a martyr, he will be admitted into Paradise. ...”*

*Koran 61:10 Believers! Should I show you a profitable exchange that will keep you from severe torment? Believe in Allah and His messenger and fight valiantly for Allah’s cause [jihad] with both your wealth and your lives. It would be better for you, if you only knew it!*

## THE EFFECTIVENESS OF JIHAD

In Mecca Mohammed was a religious preacher who converted about 10 people a year to Islam. In Medina Mohammed was a warrior and politician who converted about 10,000 people to Islam every year. Politics and jihad were a thousand times more effective than religion to convert the Arabs to Islam. If Mohammed had not taken to politics and jihad, there would have only been a few hundred Muslims when he died and Islam would have failed. The religion of Islam was a failure, but politics combined with religion was a total success.

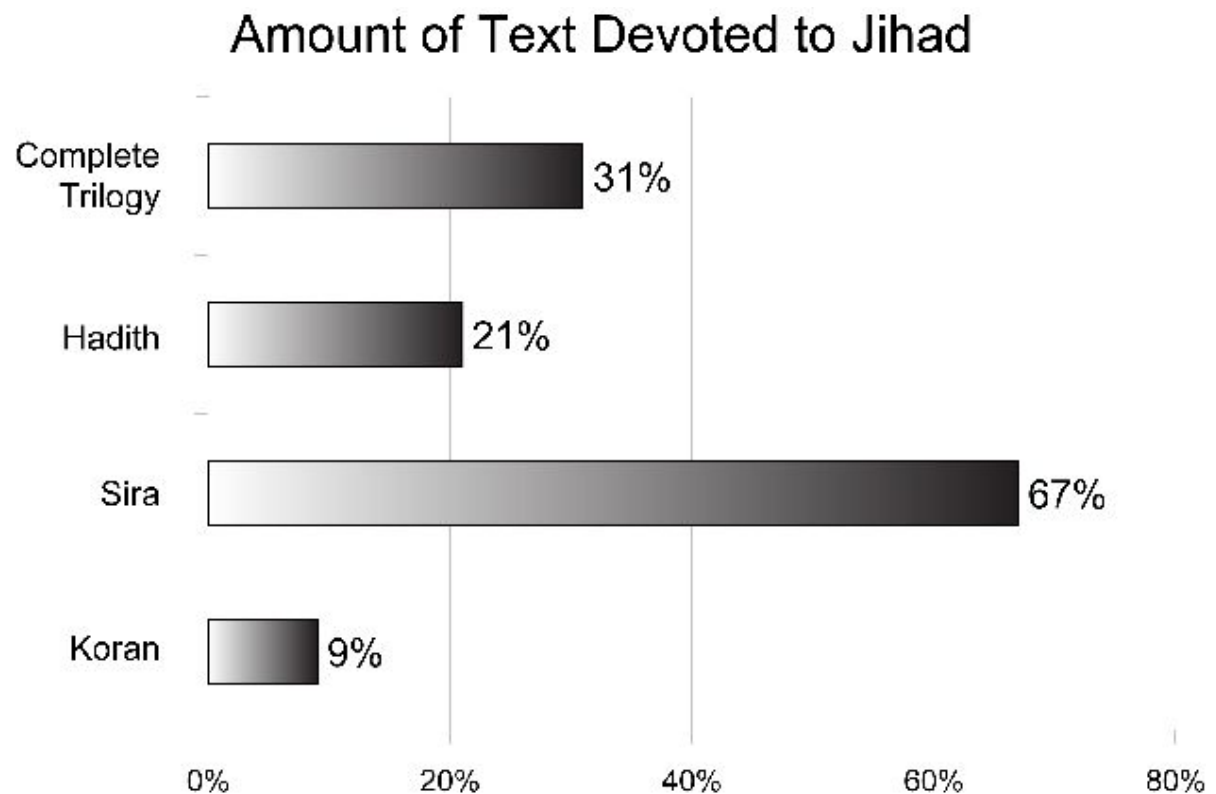
The graph clearly shows the growth of Islam during its two phases.



## THE STATISTICS OF JIHAD

Jihad takes up a large portion of the Trilogy. Jihad verses are 24% of the later, political Koran and average 9% of the total of the entire Koran. Jihad takes up 21% of the Bukhari Hadith material and the Sira devotes 67% of its text to jihad<sup>[1]</sup>. Notice how the dualism of the Koran is demonstrated by the Mecca and Medina content about jihad. The Koran of Mecca does not have any

jihad and it is the Meccan Koran we see referenced by Muslims and their apologists.

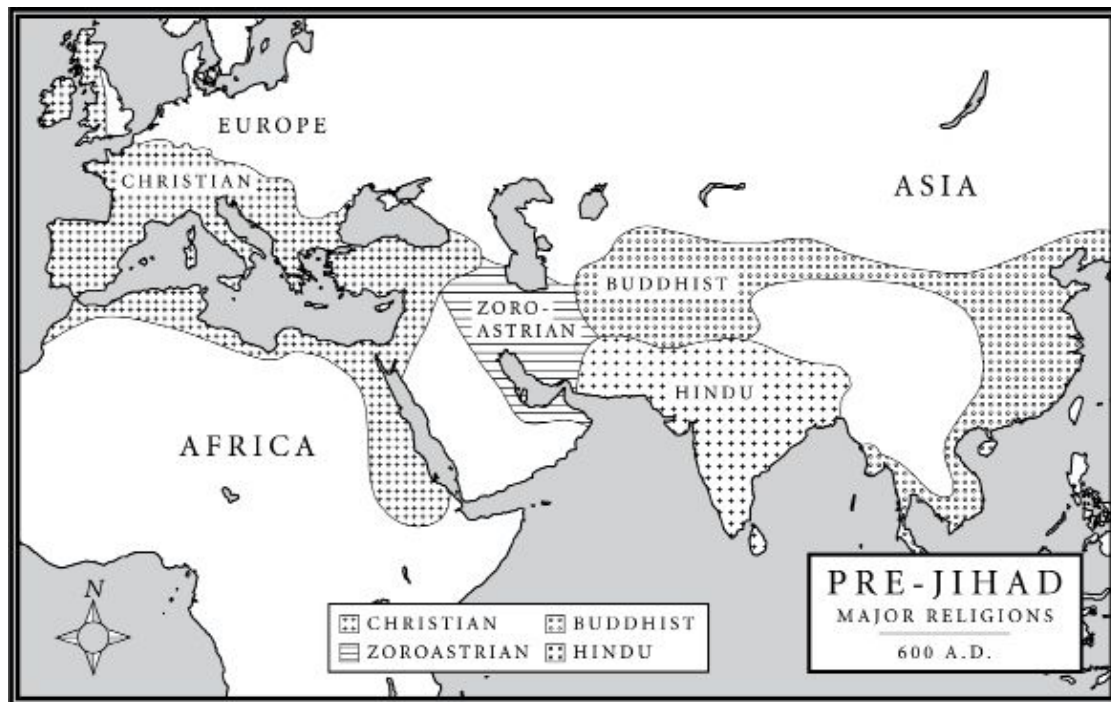
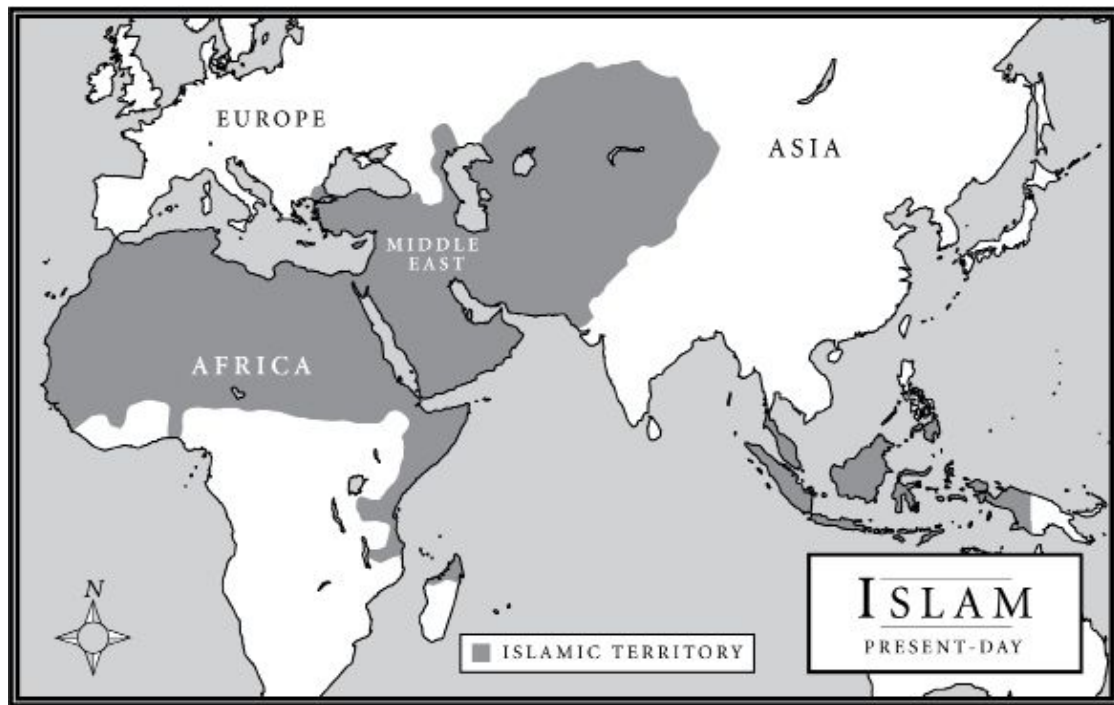


## THE TEARS OF JIHAD

Here are the deaths due to jihad over the last 1400 years<sup>[2]</sup>:

Christians 60 million  
Hindus 80 million  
Buddhists 10 million  
Africans 120 million  
Total 270 million

These deaths are called the Tears of Jihad.



[1]

[http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Percentage\\_of\\_Triology\\_Text\\_Devoted\\_to\\_Jihad.html](http://cspipublishing.com/statistical/TrilogyStats/Percentage_of_Triology_Text_Devoted_to_Jihad.html)

[2] *The Submission of Women and Slaves*, CSPI Publishing, page 181.

# SUBMISSION AND DUALISM

## CHAPTER 7

### SUBMISSION

Since Sharia is based on the Koran and the Sunna of Mohammed, it is inevitable that Sharia would contain the same fundamental principles. The first principle of Islam is that the entire world must submit to Allah and follow the Sunna of Mohammed. This implies that Muslims must submit to the Sharia. The Kafir is subjugated in every mention in the Sharia. There is no equality between a Muslim and a Kafir; the Kafir is politically an inferior.

Sharia demands that our institutions submit to Islam. Our schools must submit in how they teach about Islam. Our media must present Islam in a good light. Every facet of our civilization must submit. What this means on a daily basis is that if Islam has a demand such as school prayer, we must do as they ask.

Jihad is a demand for total submission and if the Kafir does not willingly submit, then force may be used. The dhimmi must submit in a formal way to political Islam.

### DUALISM

The Kafir and jihad are part of Sharia. Sharia holds two sets of laws—one for Muslims and one for Kafirs. Kafirs are not treated as equals, but as inferiors. This is legal dualism.

Islam holds two views about nearly every subject relating to Kafirs. Here is a tolerant example from the Koran:

*Koran 73:10 Listen to what they [Kafirs] say with patience, and leave them with dignity.*

From tolerance we move to intolerance:

*Koran 8:12 Then your Lord spoke to His angels and said, "I will be with you. Give strength to the believers. I will send terror into the Kafirs' hearts, cut off their heads and even the tips of their fingers!"*

The Koran is so filled with contradictions such as this that it provides a method to resolve the problem, called abrogation.

Abrogation means that the later verse is stronger than the earlier verse. However, both verses are still true, since the Koran is the exact, precise word of Allah. In the two verses above, the first verse is earlier than the second verse and is, therefore, weaker. It is always that way. The early, weaker “good” verse is abrogated by the later, stronger “bad” verse.

The “truth” of the earlier Meccan verses is demonstrated by the fact that it is the Meccan Koran that is quoted by Muslims and apologists. It may be abrogated, but it is still used as the sacred truth of the Koran.

Practically speaking, this means that the early verses are used when Islam is weak and the later verses are used when Islam is strong. This parallels Mohammed’s life.

Mohammed’s career had two distinctly different phases—early and late. In Mecca Mohammed was a religious preacher. Later, in Medina he became a politician and warrior and became very powerful. The early Meccan Koran gives the advice of Allah when Islam is weak and the later Medinan Koran says what to do when Islam is strong. The stronger Mohammed became, the harder he waged war against the Kafirs. The Koran gives the proper advice to every Muslim for every stage.

Effectively, there are two Mohammeds and two Korans that contradict each other. The early religious peaceful Koran of Mecca is contradicted by the later, political, jihad Koran of Medina. But it is still true and can be used. These early verses are the ones we hear by supporters of Islam.

Since Mohammed’s actions are the perfect pattern of behavior, his actions establish Islam’s dualistic ethics.

Dualism gives Islam an incredible flexibility and adaptability.

## DUALISTIC ETHICS

Islam does not have a Golden Rule. The very existence of the word “kafir” in a sacred text means that there is no Golden Rule, because no one wants to be treated as Kafirs were treated by Mohammed. Kafirs were murdered, tortured, enslaved, raped, robbed, deceived, mocked and ridiculed.

*[Bukhari 9,85,83] Mohammed: “A Muslim is a brother to other Muslims. He should never oppress them nor should he facilitate their oppression. Allah will satisfy the needs of those who satisfy the needs of their brothers.”*

Islam does not have a common ethic for humanity, instead it has dualistic ethics. There are two sets of rules: a Muslim is a brother to another Muslim. A Muslim may treat a Kafir as a brother or as an enemy.

Also in Islam, something that is not true is not always a lie.

*[Bukhari 3,49,857] Mohammed: "A man who brings peace to the people by making up good words or by saying nice things, though untrue, does not lie."*

An oath by a Muslim is flexible.

*[Bukhari 8,78,618] Abu Bakr faithfully kept his oaths until Allah revealed to Mohammed the atonement for breaking them. Afterwards he said, "If I make a pledge and later discover a more worthy pledge, then I will take the better action and make amends for my earlier promise."*

Mohammed repeatedly told Muslims to deceive Kafirs, when it would advance Islam.

*[Bukhari 5,59,369] Mohammed asked, "Who will kill Ka'b, the enemy of Allah and Mohammed?"*

*Bin Maslama rose and responded, "O Mohammed! Would it please you if I killed him?"*

*Mohammed answered, "Yes."*

*Bin Maslama then said, "Give me permission to deceive him with lies so that my plot will succeed."*

*Mohammed replied, "You may speak falsely to him."*

*[Bukhari 4, 52, 268] Mohammed said, "Jihad is deceit."*

Islam has a word for deception that advances its goals: *taqiyya*. Taqiyya is sacred deception. But a Muslim must never lie to another Muslim. A lie should never be told unless there is no other way to accomplish the task. Al Tabarani, in *Al Awsat*, said, "Lies are sins except when they are told for the welfare of a Muslim or for saving him from a disaster." [\[1\]](#)

## FRIENDS

Islamic dualistic ethics includes the doctrine of friends. There are 12 verses in the Koran which state that a Muslim is not the friend of a Kafir. Here are two examples:

*Koran 4:144 Believers! Do not take Kafirs as friends over fellow believers. Would you give Allah a clear reason to punish you?*

*Koran 3:28 Believers should not take Kafirs as friends in preference to other believers. Those who do this will have none of Allah's protection and will only have themselves as guards. Allah warns you to fear Him for all will return to Him.*

## ENSLAVEMENT

Dualism dictates that a Kafir may be enslaved, but it is forbidden to enslave a Muslim. If a slave converts to Islam, then there is a benefit in freeing him, but there is no benefit in freeing a Kafir slave.

*[Bukhari 3,46,693] Mohammed said, "If a man frees a Muslim slave, Allah will free him from the fires of Hell in the same way that he freed the slave." Bin Marjana said that, after he related that revelation to Ali, the man freed a slave for whom he had been offered one thousand dinars by Abdullah.*

## AL WALAA WA AL BARAA—SACRED LOVE AND SACRED HATE

The Sharia teaches the dualistic ethical principle of "loving what Allah loves and hating what Allah hates" (see page 18). This includes having an aversion to Kafir political systems, such as Constitutional law and loving Sharia law. This principle is behind the Islamic demands for implementation of Sharia in America. No matter what the Kafir way is, it is not to be imitated, since Allah hates all manifestations of Kafirs.

<sup>[1]</sup>. Bat Ye'or, *The Dhimmi* (Cranbury, N.J.: Associated University Presses, 2003), 392.



# THE DHIMMI

## CHAPTER 8

**ISLAMIC SCHOLARS CLAIM:** Islam is a brother religion to Christianity and Judaism; under Islamic rule Christians and Jews who become dhimmis are cared for and protected.

When Mohammed moved to Medina, it was half Jewish and he annihilated them. Then he turned his attentions to the wealthy Jews of Khaybar. He attacked them all without provocation and crushed them. They lost all of their wealth and were left in a third-class political status as dhimmis. The Jews were subject to Sharia, lost all political power, but they could still be Jews. As dhimmis they had to pay a yearly tax called the *jizya*, half of their income.

From the Sharia:

### O11.0 KAFIR SUBJECTS OF THE ISLAMIC STATE

o11.1 A formal contract (dhimma) is made with Christians and Jews, but not Mormons<sup>[1]</sup>. They then become dhimmis.

o11.3 The dhimmis must follow the rules of Islam.

- Pay the jizya, the dhimmi poll tax.
- If the dhimmis do these things, then they are protected by the state. They are allowed to practice their religions, hold their own courts, and laws.

Here are the complete Sharia dhimmi rules taken from a treaty with Christians in 637 AD. The rules are similar for Jews and others.

#### The Treaty of Umar

We shall not build, in our cities or in their neighborhood new monasteries, churches, convents, or monks' cells, nor shall we repair, by day or by night, such of them as fall in ruins or are situated in the quarters of the Muslims.

We shall keep our gates wide open for passersby and travelers. We shall give board and lodging to all Muslims who pass our way for three days.

We shall not give shelter in our churches or in our dwellings to any spy nor hide him from the Muslims.

We shall not manifest our religion publicly nor convert anyone to it. We shall not prevent any of our kin from entering Islam if they wish it.

We shall show respect toward the Muslims, and we shall rise from our seats when they wish to sit.

We shall not seek to resemble the Muslims by imitating any of their garments.

We shall not mount on saddles, nor shall we gird swords nor bear any kind of arms nor carry them on our persons.

We shall not engrave Arabic inscriptions on our seals.

We shall not sell fermented drinks (alcohol).

We shall clip the fronts of our heads (keep a short forelock as a sign of humiliation).

We shall always dress in the same way wherever we may be, and we shall bind the zunar round our waists. (Christians and Jews had to wear special clothing.)

We shall not display our crosses or our books in the roads or markets of the Muslims. We shall only use clappers in our churches very softly. We shall not raise our voices when following our dead. We shall not take slaves who have been allotted to Muslims.

We shall not build houses higher than the houses of the Muslims.

Whoever strikes a Muslim with deliberate intent shall forfeit the protection of this pact.

(from Al-Turtushi, *Siraj Al-Muluk*, p. 229-30)

In addition, the dhimmi could not testify in a Sharia court and, therefore, had no legal recourse in an argument with a Muslim. A dhimmi could not criticize Mohammed or speak with a Muslim about Christianity.

The Sharia and the dhimmi explain how the Christian nations of Turkey, Egypt, North Africa, Lebanon, Syria, Iraq and Ethiopia became Islamic. Jihad placed Muslims in political control and established Sharia law. Then all of the Christians became dhimmis. Centuries of the jizya tax and third-class status caused them to convert. It was Sharia law and the dhimmi status that destroyed Christianity in Islamic lands. Western civilization cannot survive under Sharia law.

<sup>[1]</sup>*Traveller* was written in the 14th century, Mormons are a later interpolation.

# SLAVERY

## CHAPTER 9

**SHARIA:** The current version of the manual on Sharia, *The Reliance of the Traveller*, contains a vestige of Islam's extensive doctrine of slavery. Section k 32.0, Manumission, of the Sharia is left without translation. Instead there is an editorial apology about slavery as something that Islam set about to abolish as soon as possible. This is pure *taqiyya*, sacred deceit. Islam has been the most powerful enslaver of any and all ideologies. Islam was built on slavery.

### MOHAMMED AND SLAVERY

The term *slave* is a positive one in Islam. Mohammed referred to himself and Muslims as the slaves of Allah. Mohammed's second convert was a slave.

Mohammed himself was involved in every single aspect of slavery. He had non-believing men killed so their women and children could be made slaves<sup>[1]</sup>. He gave slaves away for gifts<sup>[2]</sup>. He owned many slaves, some of them black<sup>[3]</sup>. He passed around slaves for the purpose of sex to his companions, men who were his chief lieutenants<sup>[4]</sup>. He stood by while others beat slaves<sup>[5]</sup>. He shared the pleasure of forced sex with women slaves after conquest<sup>[6]</sup>. He captured slaves and wholesaled them to raise money for jihad<sup>[7]</sup>. One of his favorite sexual partners was a slave, who bore him a son<sup>[8]</sup>. He got slaves as gifts from other rulers<sup>[9]</sup>. The very pulpit he preached from was made by a slave<sup>[10]</sup>. He ate food prepared by slaves<sup>[11]</sup>. He was treated medically by a slave<sup>[12]</sup>. He had a slave tailor<sup>[13]</sup>. He declared that a slave who ran away from his master would not have his prayers answered<sup>[14]</sup>. And he approved of an owner's having sex with his slaves<sup>[15]</sup>.

### ISLAM AND SLAVERY

Islam enslaved Africans, Europeans (over a million of them), Hindus, Buddhists, and anyone else who was in the path of jihad. Islam has enslaved more people than any other culture. Muslims do not acknowledge and apologize for their history of enslavement of all races and faiths.

A little known fact is that the highest priced slave in Mecca was always a white woman. The Sunna is that Mohammed's favorite sex-slave was a

white Christian woman.

Islam still practices slavery in Africa. It is found in Saudi Arabia, Mauritania, the Sudan and other Islamic areas that are near Kafirs.

Historically, it was the political actions of Christians that ended slavery<sup>[16]</sup>.

[1] A. Guillaume, *The Life of Muhammad* (London: Oxford University Press, 1982), 466.

[2] Ibid., p. 499.

[3] Ibid., p. 516.

[4] Ibid., p. 593.

[5] Ibid., p. 295.

[6] Ibid., p. 496.

[7] Ibid., p. 466.

[8] William Muir, *The Life of Mohammed* (AMS Press, 1975), 425.

[9] Ibid., p. 425.

[10] Bukhari, Hadith, Volume 1, Book 8, Number 440.

[11] Ibid., Volume 3, Book 34, Number 295.

[12] Ibid., Volume 3, Book 36, Number 481.

[13] Ibid., Volume 7, Book 65, Number 344.

[14] *Muslim*, Hadith, Book 001, Number 0131.

[15] Ibid., Book 008, Number 3383.

[16] Bernard Lewis, *Race and Slavery in the Middle East*, Oxford University Press, 1990, page 79.

# FREEDOM OF IDEAS

## CHAPTER 10

**CLAIM:** Islam is a religion of tolerance.

**THE SHARIA:** Apostasy means to leave Islam; for a Muslim to leave Islam is a capital crime, punishable by death.

### 08.0 APOSTASY FROM ISLAM

08.1 When a person who has reached puberty and is sane, voluntarily apostatizes from Islam, he deserves to be killed.

In Islam the option of killing an apostate, one who leaves Islam, is spelled out in the Hadith and the early history of Islam after Mohammed's death.

When Mohammed died, entire tribes wanted to leave Islam. The first wars fought by Islam were against these apostates, and thousands were killed.

*[Bukhari 2,23,483] After the death of Mohammed, Abu Bakr became the caliph, and he declared war against a group of Arabs who reverted back to paganism.*

*[Bukhari 9,83,17] Mohammed: "A Muslim who has admitted that there is no god but Allah and that I am His prophet may not be killed except for three reasons: as punishment for murder, for adultery, or for apostasy."*

No punishment is too great for the apostate.

*[Bukhari 8,82,797] Some people came to Medina and became Muslims. They became ill, so Mohammed sent them to the place where the camels were sheltered and told them to drink camel urine and milk as a remedy. They followed his advice, but when they recovered, they killed the shepherd guarding the camels and stole the herd.*

*In the morning, Mohammed heard what the men had done and ordered their capture. Before noon, the men were captured and brought before Mohammed. He ordered that their hands and feet be cut off and their eyes gouged out with hot pokers. They were then*

*thrown on jagged rocks, their pleas for water ignored and they died of thirst.*

*Abu said, “They were thieves and murderers who abandoned Islam and reverted to paganism, thus attacking Allah and Mohammed.”*

Kill the apostate.

*[Bukhari 9,89,271] A certain Jew accepted Islam, but then reverted to his original faith. Muadh saw the man with Abu Musa and said, “What has this man done?”*

*Abu Musa answered, “He accepted Islam, but then reverted to Judaism.”*

*Muadh then said, “It is the verdict of Allah and Mohammed that he be put to death and I’m not going to sit down unless you kill him.”*

The idea of freedom of religion and thought is impossible in Islam. Submission is the key idea and the ideal citizen is a slave of Allah. All thought must submit to the Koran and the Sunna—Sharia law.

## ART

There is no limit to the extent and detail of Sharia law. All public expressions of ideas and art must submit to Sharia’s prohibitions.

## R40.0 MUSIC, SONG, AND DANCE—MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

r40.1 Musical instruments are to be done away with.

- Flutes, stringed instruments and the like are condemned
- Those who listen to singers will have their ears filled with lead on Judgment day
- Songs create hypocrisy

r40.2 It is unlawful to use musical instruments or listen to the mandolin, lute, cymbals, and flute. It is permissible to play the tambourine at weddings, circumcisions, and other times, even if it has bells on its sides. Beating drum is unlawful

## W50.0 THE PROHIBITION OF DEPICTING ANIMATE LIFE

w50.1 One should realize that the prohibition of picture making is extremely severe.

*[Bukhari 7,72,843] Mohammed grew depressed one day after Gabriel's promised visit was delayed. When Gabriel came at last, Mohammed complained about the delay. Gabriel said to him, "Angels will not enter a house that contains a dog or a picture."*

## IMITATING THE CREATIVE ACT OF ALLAH

w50.2 Pictures imitate the creative act of Allah.

*[Bukhari 4,54,447] One time I [Aisha] created a stuffed pillow for Mohammed and decorated it with pictures of animals. He came in with some other people one day, and I noticed a look of excitement on his face. I asked, "What is wrong?" He replied, "What is that pillow doing here?" I answered, "I made that for you so that you could lie on it." He said, "Are you not aware that angels will not enter a house with pictures in it and that the person that makes such pictures will be punished on Judgment Day until he gives life to that which he has made?"*

## P44.0 MAKING PICTURES

p44.1 Those who make pictures will burn in Hell.

*[Bukhari 8,73,130] There was once a curtain with pictures of animals on it in my [Aisha's] house. When Mohammed saw it, his face became flushed with anger. He tore it to bits and said, "People that paint such pictures will receive Hell's most terrible punishment on Judgment Day."*

## LITERATURE

All literature must submit to the demands of Sharia. Those who offend Islam may be assassinated, since Mohammed had several artists assassinated. Salman Rushdie has lived under a death threat for writing a novel, *The Satanic Verses*. There were world wide riots and killings when the Danish Mohammed cartoons were published. Theo Van Gogh and Pim Fortun, two artists, were assassinated in Europe for "blasphemy" against Islam.

Mohammed repeatedly killed artists and intellectuals such as Kab, a poet, who wrote a poem criticizing Islam. Notice the use of deceit.



*[Bukhari 5,59,369] Allah's Apostle said, "Who is willing to kill Kab who has hurt Allah and His Apostle?"*

*Thereupon Maslama got up saying, "O Allah's Apostle! Would you like that I kill him?"*

*The Prophet said, "Yes."*

*Maslama said, "Then allow me to say a false thing to deceive Kab."*

*The Prophet said, "You may say it."*

*Then Maslama went to Kab and said, "Mohammed demands money from us and I need to borrow money."*

*On that, Kab said, "By Allah, you will get tired of him!"*

*Maslama said, "Now as we have followed him, we do not want to leave him. Now we want you to lend us a camel load of food."*

*Kab said, "Yes, I will lend you the food, but you should mortgage something to me."*

*They mortgaged their arms to him and promised to return that night. So Maslama returned with two men and said to them, "When Kab comes, I will touch his hair and smell it and, when you see that I have got hold of his head, kill him."*

*Kab came down to them wrapped in his clothes and smelling of perfume.*

*Maslama said, "I have never smelt a better scent than this. Will you allow me to smell your head?"*

*Kab said, "Yes."*

*When Maslama got a strong hold of him, he said to his companion, "Get at him!"*

*So they killed him and went to the Prophet and informed him. Abu Rafi was killed after Kab Bin Al-Ashraf.*

Ishaq<sup>819</sup> Mohammed had told his commanders only to kill those who resisted; otherwise they were not to bother anyone except for those who had spoken against Mohammed. He then issued death warrants for all of those in Mecca who had resisted Islam. The list of those to be killed was:

- One of Mohammed's secretaries. He had said that Mohammed sometimes let him insert better speech when he was recording

Mohammed's Koranic revelations, and this caused the secretary to lose faith.

- Two girls who had sung satires against Mohammed.
- A Muslim tax collector who had become an apostate (left Islam).
- A man who had insulted Mohammed.
- All artists and political figures who had opposed him.

# SHARIA FINANCE

## CHAPTER 11

**ISLAMIC SCHOLARS CLAIM:** Sharia finance is sacred finance and all religious and moral people should invest in Sharia financial instruments. The money will not be invested in liquor, tobacco, gambling, pork, art or any other impure businesses.

Today there is an increasing demand for Muslims to have their own financial system and Sharia compliant financial products. Sharia finance uses a work-around to avoid paying interest, which is illegal in Islam. It turns out that Sharia finance actually charges more for the use of money, but it is not called interest, it is termed a leasing cost.

**THE SHARIA:** Sharia finance must put part of its profits into the zakat, Islamic charity. The zakat must be used for the following:

*Koran 9:60 Charity [the zakat] is only to be given to the poor and needy, to those who collect them, to those whose hearts are won to Islam, for ransoms, for debtors, for fighting in Allah's cause [jihad], and for the traveler. This is a law from Allah, and Allah is knowing and wise.*

Sharia devotes pages to the zakat. It is to be paid to:

- Poor and needy Muslims, but not to kafirs
- Those who collect the zakat
- New converts to Islam (to strengthen them in Islam)
- To ransom prisoners and slaves
- Fighting in Allah's cause, jihad
- Travelers

## THOSE FIGHTING FOR ALLAH

h8.17 The category *fighting for Allah's cause*, means people engaged in Islamic war, but who are not part of a regular army and receive a salary. These jihadists must be paid for weapons, clothing, meals, and travel and all other expenses. Their families should be paid as well.

h8.24 It is not permissible to give zakat to a Kafir.

When we participate in Sharia finance, we support:

- Charity for Muslims *only* with no charity going to Kafirs.
- Strengthening Muslim converts.
- Muslim bureaucrats.
- Al Qaeda and other jihadists. This includes money to the families of “suicide bombers” or any other jihadists who are killed

Giving zakat money for jihad is not a theory. We saw the practical effects of the zakat with the Holy Land Foundation and other Islamic charities. In 2007, in Dallas, Texas, the FBI successfully prosecuted the Holy Land Foundation for financing jihad (terrorism).

When we participate in Sharia finance, or any other aspect of Sharia, we are morally part of the rest:

- Abuse and subjugation of women
- Killing of apostates
- Assassination of artists and writers
- The ethical crime of unrepentant slavery
- Third class citizenship in politics for Kafirs
- The murder of 270 million people in the Tears of Jihad

## EASE AND NECESSITY

Sharia has two principles which can be called “ease” and “necessity” (see page 41). Fundamentally, ease and necessity means that if a Muslim lives amongst Kafirs, the Muslim can do business the Kafir way.

w43.0 dealing with interest in enemy lands

w43.1 Muslims can pay interest if they live in *dar al harb*, the land of war (amongst Kafirs), meaning the Sharia is not the law of the land.

Hence, Muslims can pay and receive interest in America, according to Sharia. So why do Muslims want Sharia financing? Simple. The principle of submission comes into play. Kafirs must submit to Sharia in all matters,

including banking. Also, sacred love and sacred hate ( pages 18, 29), means that our Kafir financial system must be destroyed.

Notice that according to Sharia, America is “enemy land”.

# DEMANDS

## CHAPTER 12

**MUSLIM LEADERS CLAIM:** In order for us to practice our religion, you must give us our prayer in school; prayer in the workplace, rooms set aside in schools and workplaces for prayer, special food (*halal*); days off for Muslim holidays; head scarves at work and school and allow full body burkas in sports. Kafirs must never criticize any aspect of Islam, such as polygamy, jihad or wife-beating. Kafirs must furnish welfare support for our many wives, give special treatment to Muslim women in hospitals, and on and on.

### THE SHARIA

The Sharia lays out the complete process and strategy of immigration into a Kafir nation and what to do to Islamicize the society. If you want to see the future of Islam in America, read the Sira (biography of Mohammed) of 1400 years ago.

When Muslims first arrive, they accept their new home. Their first step is to announce that Islam is a brother religion to Christianity and Judaism. Dialogues and “bridge building” sessions are held for the media and Kafir community. They also claim that Western Civilization is actually based on Islam’s Golden Age.

After these claims are in place and accepted come the demands for changes in the Kafir nation. Those who resist these changes are called bigots, Islamophobes and racists, even though it is never made clear why resisting Political Islam has anything to do with race.

### THE KAFIR LEADERS

Kafir leaders know nothing about Islam and Sharia law. They all have met nice Muslims, so they think that Islam must be good and the trouble makers must be extremists.

Kafir leaders know nothing about dualistic ethics or political submission. The prime motivation of Kafir leaders is to be nice and play the role of tolerant host to these new guests. A second motivation is not to say or do anything that will cause them to be labeled a bigot.

The master plan of Kafir leadership is that if we are nice, Muslims will see how good we are and will reform Islam. But, if your goal is to implement Sharia law and the process of applying Sharia law has worked without fail for 1400 years, why reform what is not broken?

Sharia cannot be reformed. It is Allah's law, and it is perfect, universal, complete and perfect.

## SACRED LOVE AND SACRED HATE

The emotional motivation behind Islam's demands is "sacred hate", *al Walaa wa al Baraa* ( pages 18, 29). Allah hates the Kafirs, their culture and politics. Therefore, anyone who loves Allah must hate what Allah hates and also must then have an aversion to our laws and Constitution. Hence, Islam must constantly make demands that Kafirs submit to Sharia.

## FIRST AMENDMENT

Islam is a religion and Muslims have Freedom of Religion under our First Amendment. To deny any of Islam's religious demands is unconstitutional, so we must do whatever they ask, if it is religious.

But every "religious" demand by Islam has a political component. Here we have Mohammed's special gifts from Allah:

*[Bukhari 1,7,331] Mohammed: I have been given five things which were not given to any one else before me:*

*1. Allah made me victorious by awe, by His frightening my enemies for a distance of one month's journey.*

*2. The earth has been made for me and for my followers, a place for praying and a place to perform rituals; therefore, anyone of my followers can pray wherever the time of a prayer is due.*

*3. The spoils of war has been made lawful for me yet it was not lawful for anyone else before me.*

*4. I have been given the right of intercession on the Day of Resurrection.*

*5. Every Prophet used to be sent to his nation only but I have been sent to all mankind.*

The role of Islamic prayer is a political demand along with jihad and Sharia. Islam demands that the state serve its every need. This demand is the demand for political submission by Kafir governments.

Kafirs must learn the difference between religion and politics. The jihad attack on the World Trade Center was a political act with a religious motivation. The innocent victims in the Towers who jumped to their death rather than be burned alive were not taking part in a religious ceremony.

When Muslims commandeer the public streets to pray, the prayer may be religious, but taking over the street is purely political.

The demand for Sharia law in all forms, including Muslim school prayer for instance, calls for us to take political action, issue directives to school boards, spend tax dollars in meetings, etc. The act of prayer may be religious, but it requires a political action and support of the state to happen.

Islamic prayer has a religious motivation and a political result. It is a demand for submission of the body politic by an ideology that is fundamentally in opposition to American law, culture and tradition.

We should react to all of Islam's political demands with a political response.

## MAKING IT EASY AND NECESSITY

Kafirs do not have to accommodate Islam's demands.

The Sharia has two principles that provide guidance in the situation when Muslims cannot practice their pure Islam under Sharia. The technical name is *tayseer*, meaning "lightening one's burden" or "making it easy".

*Koran 4:28 Allah wishes to lighten your burden, for man was created weak.*

When the circumstances are difficult and Sharia law is not in force, a Muslim's burden is lightened. They are obligated to pray and not handle pork, for instance, but if the circumstances are difficult, then the requirements are lightened. This leads to the concept of *darura*, necessity.

If it is necessary, what is forbidden is permitted. If a Muslim is hungry and there is no *halal* (Sharia compliant) food, then he can eat any food. If a Muslim is where they cannot pray, then the prayer can be done later. If Sharia law has not been implemented, then a Muslim may handle pork, for example, with no consequences.

Here is an example of the principle of *darura*:

f15.17 It is a necessary condition for the permissibility of joining prayers (making up missed prayers) that the person be:

[...]



(5) Someone who fears harm in earning his living.

In short, if a Muslim cannot pray at work or school, it can be made up later. Islamic demands are about “wants” not necessities. If their demands are not met, there is no harm to their religion.

Another example of *darura* is found in buying insurance. Insurance is forbidden in Sharia, but if car insurance is required by Kafir law, then necessity allows a Muslim to buy the forbidden insurance.

By banning Sharia law, no Muslim's needs are violated. We are restricting Political Islam, not restricting religious Islam.

When we say no to Sharia prayer at school, we are not limiting any religious freedoms, we are protecting Kafir citizens against Islam's political demands. If a Muslim cannot pray at the appointed times, then Sharia law allows the prayer to be made up later. There is no harm in delaying prayer. Mohammed delayed prayer, hence all Muslims can delay prayer.

If Islamic prayer is allowed in school, how far does the prayer accommodation go? There are many elements—preparation, a special room, ritual bathing and special days that demand different prayers and longer times. In the final form of Islamic prayer, the room must be used only for Islamic prayer and special plumbing will have to be installed for the proper foot bathing for Islamic prayer.

Meanwhile, what does the teacher do when the students are gone to pray? If the teacher gives some information that is needed on the next test, does that discriminate against Islam? Why should the state have to pay for the room and foot baths for Islam?

The prayer is not a private affair. Islamic organizations will have to come and “explain” about Islam to the students.

Once Islamic prayer is in place, what is to stop the demand that the kitchen at the school become *halal* (Sharia compliant)? Why should the Kafir students eat while Ramadan fasting is going on? Since fasting weakens body and mind, should Muslims have to take tests during Ramadan? Should Muslim female athletes wear Sharia compliant clothing (burka, hijab, ... ) instead of school team clothing? Do not think this is an imaginary scenario. Submission to this process is underway in Britain today.

Then comes the demand for Sharia family law. After that comes the demand that Muslims be recognized as a “minority” and receive special treatment in appointments, jobs, and civil-rights. Then come Sharia courts.

Once the thin end of the Sharia wedge is in place, there will be no end until there is full Sharia compliance for the nation and no Constitution.

## ARTICLE SIX

Article 6 of the US Constitution states that the Constitution is the highest law of the land and cannot be subjugated to any other legal code. The fundamental claim of Sharia is that it is the highest law in the world and that all other legal codes must submit to Islamic law. There is a massive contradiction that is being ignored as Sharia law is being implemented under the guise of Freedom of Religion.

Islam's religion always has a political component that must be accommodated. As a contrasting example, there are as many Buddhists who have come to America just as Muslims have. Can you name a single political demand that Buddhists have made in the schools or any other area? Do you know of a case where Buddhists have made demands for coming into schools, businesses, law enforcement or hospitals and making demands that we learn about Buddhism and accommodate Buddhist practices? No, because Buddhism is a religion, not a political/religious ideology.

The religion of Islam demands that we make political accommodations, since Islam is a political ideology as well as a religion.

The Sharia attack on Article 6 is not direct, but it is a flanking attack. Take the example of freedom of speech and the press. When the Danish Mohammed cartoons were published, there were no major papers in the US that published them, since Muslims said that the cartoons were blasphemy and offended Islam. The result was that we followed Sharia law and did not print the cartoons. What politician protested at Sharia law being implemented and our Constitution being weakened by submission to it?

Freedom of speech is being denied when anyone who criticizes Islam is called a bigot and an Islamophobe. Currently, the First Amendment is being used to destroy Article 6. Islamic political doctrine is being legitimized under the cover of religion.

As a Constitutional matter, no aspect of Sharia should be allowed.

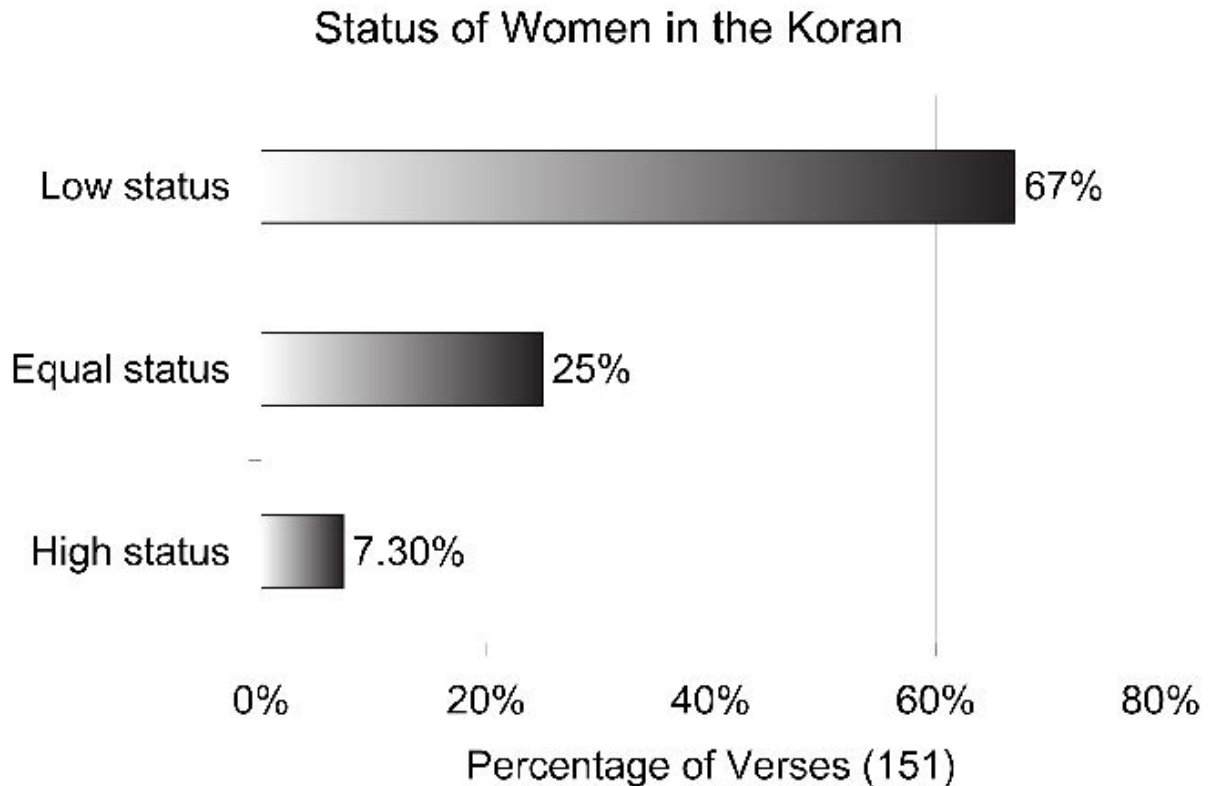
# APPENDIX

## STATISTICAL STUDY OF ISLAMIC DOCTRINE

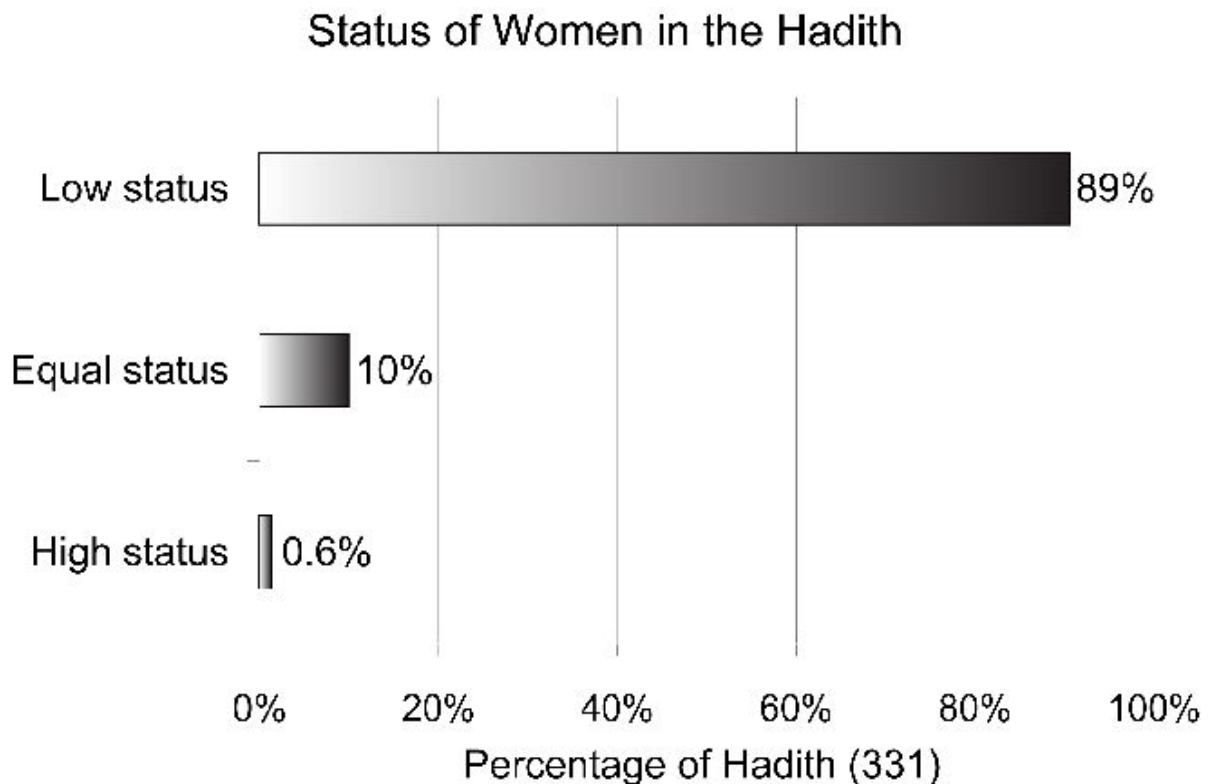
There is a large body of Islamic doctrine about the inequality between men and women. What is confusing to a non-Muslim is that the doctrine can be contradictory. Islamic dualism means that there are two choices, both equally true. A statistical study of the doctrine has been made, so that the entire picture can be seen.

Each verse or hadith can be judged on the position of the female in society. There are a number of verses that praise the mother above all men. There are many verses that say that women and men will be judged equally as to their actions on Judgment Day. In many cases there is no power relationship at all; it is a neutral reference.

The process for generating the charts below selects all of the text that contains a reference to the female. Then the female data is sorted into four categories: High status, equal status, low status and neutral. A neutral reference does not have any hierarchical information. A example of a neutral reference could be a woman's name in a list. Here is data from the Koran :



Here is the same data analysis about the Hadith:



## THE KORAN

One of the foundations of Sharia law is the Koran. Since the Koran is the most famous book that has not been read or understood by Kafirs, this seems like a huge roadblock in learning about Sharia.

The Koran is actually easy to understand if you know one historical fact. We have a history of Mohammed's day and we find that illiterate Arabs not only understood the Koran, but they discussed its meaning.

They could do this because they were using a different Koran from the one you buy at the bookstore today. The Koran was produced years after Mohammed's death and it was arranged in order of chapter length for unknown reasons. Long chapters were placed at the beginning and the shortest chapters at the end. Imagine if you took a novel, cut off the spine and arranged the chapters in order of length. The novel would be destroyed since the plot would have been eliminated. The bookstore Koran has been randomized and makes no sense because it has no story or plot.

If you were a companion of Mohammed every verse made sense since it was in response to the situation Mohammed was in at the time. Each and every verse had a context and could be easily understood.

This historical Koran can be reconstructed. We have a highly detailed biography of Mohammed called the Sira. If we take the Sira and insert the appropriate Koran verses into his life, we will recreate the original Koran. Anyone can read and understand the historical Koran.

When this is done, it is clear that there are two very different Korans. The early Koran of Mecca is religious. The later Koran written in Medina is very political. It is important to note that they frequently say things that contradict each other. This is the very foundation to Islamic dualism.

The historical Koran has a story. It begins with poetry about god. Then it declares war on every person who does not agree with Mohammed. It documents the annihilation of the native Kafir Arab culture of tolerance. In the end, all Arabians submitted in every detail to Sharia law. The political domination of Kafir Arabia to Islam was complete.

FOR MORE INFORMATION

[www.politicalislam.com](http://www.politicalislam.com)

# READING LIST

## THE SIRA

*Mohammed and the Unbelievers*, CSPI Publishing

## THE HADITH

*The Political Traditions of Mohammed*, CSPI Publishing

## THE KORAN

*A Simple Koran or An Abridged Koran*, CSPI Publishing

## THE BEST ONE SOURCE BOOK FOR CHRISTIANS OR JEWS

*The Third Choice*, Mark Durie

## WOMEN AND SHARIA

*Cruel and Usual Punishment*, Nonie Darwish

## GENERAL INFORMATION

*Stealth Jihad*, Robert Spencer

*Why I Am Not a Muslim*, Ibn Warraq

*They Must Be Stopped*, Brigitte Gabriel